



- Cicik Kurniawati
- Susiningsih



## KUNCI JAWABAN

# Bahasa Inggris

Mata Pelajaran Wajib



*Intan Pariwara*

# UNIT 1

## Let's Visit Amazing Places!

### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. express conditionals followed by instructions or suggestions,
  - b. use the first conditional sentences correctly.
2. be able to:
  - a. express conditionals followed by instructions or suggestions,
  - b. use the first conditional sentences correctly.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned in this unit, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be disciplined, polite, cooperative and responsible in communicating with others.



Source: publisher's doc.; photographer: Cicik K.

Look at the above photo carefully. Do you know where the photo was taken? Is the place interesting? What interesting place have you visited? What do you suggest to your friends when visiting the place?

In this unit you will learn how to use expressions with if clauses followed by imperatives or suggestions. Be active and attempt all the tasks accordingly, to improve your speaking and writing skills.



## TASK 1

Look at the pictures.

They are icons or landmarks of several famous cities in the world.

What are they called?

In what cities and countries are they located?

**Jawaban:**

1. Marina Bay Hotel, Singapore.
2. Putrajaya, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia.
3. Gadang Clock Tower, Bukittinggi, West Sumatra, Indonesia.
4. Ho Chi Minh Statue, Ho Chi Minh city, Vietnam.
5. Namsan or Seoul Tower, Seoul, South Korea.
6. London Eye, London, England.
7. Tokyo Tower, Tokyo, Japan.
8. The Arc de Triomphe, Paris, France.



## Variasi

Match each icon or landmark with its location, correctly.

No.	Icon/Landmark	Location
1.	Angkor Wat	a. Cuzco, Peru
2.	Agia Sophia	b. Beijing, China
3.	Taj Mahal	c. Madrid, Spain
4.	The Burj Al Arab Hotel	d. Holland
5.	Forbidden City	e. Moscow, Russia
6.	Machu Pichu	f. Agra, India
7.	Barelang Bridge	g. Siem Reap, Cambodia
8.	Kremlin	h. Batam, Indonesia
9.	The Empire State Building	i. Dubai, United Arab Emirates
10.	Windmills at Kinderdijk	j. New York, the United States
		k. Istanbul, Turkey

**Jawaban:**

1. g    2. k    3. f    4. i    5. b  
6. a    7. h    8. e    9. j    10. d



## TASK 2

What do you know about each landmark in TASK 1?

In pairs, describe it in brief.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik bekerja berpasangan dan setiap pasangan mengamati tempat-tempat dalam gambar-gambar di TASK sebelumnya.
2. Tiap pasangan berdiskusi untuk mendeskripsikan tempat-tempat tersebut secara singkat.
3. Setelah waktu untuk kegiatan ini habis, Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk tunjuk jari membacakan jawabannya. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan setelah itu, melengkapi atau membetulkan deskripsi yang disampaikan temannya.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru sebaiknya memberi kesempatan kepada peserta didik yang kurang aktif untuk menyampaikan jawabannya.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai kepada peserta didik yang aktif menjawab.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. Marina Bay Sands Hotel is the largest 5-star hotel, located at Marina Bay, Singapore. The hotel has three towers and over 2,500 rooms. The most attractive spot is the large outdoor swimming pool, located on the connected rooftops of three towers. If you see it from a distance, it is like a boat on towers.

2. Putrajaya is designed to serve as the federal administrative center of Malaysia. It is around an hour drive from Kuala Lumpur, the capital of Malaysia. This planned city will be the location of almost all of Malaysia's governmental ministries, such as the office of the Prime Minister, Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Ministry of Finance and Palace of Justice. The city will provide hotels, schools, mosques, shopping centers, housing-estate complexes, convention centers, monuments, etc. It also has an artificial lake, for travel around the city by boat. Besides, you can get on a shuttle bus to take you around the city. Foreigners can board a bus for free at certain times.
3. Gadang Clock Tower is a landmark of Bukittinggi city, West Sumatra. The clock tower is located in the center of the city, near the main market. It has large clocks on each side of the tower. The name "Jam Gadang" means "big clock". One unique feature about the clock is the use of IIII for number 4, instead of the Roman number IV.
4. Ho Chi Minh statue is located in front of the People's Committee Building, formerly the City Hall, Ho Chi Minh city. The statue was built in honor of Ho Chi Minh, the most influential figure in Vietnam. It shows the figure of Ho Chi Minh seated while teaching a Vietnamese girl.
5. Namsan or Seoul Tower has become a major tourist attraction. The 236.7 meter high Namsan Tower offers panoramic views of Seoul and the surrounding areas. The tower looks stunning at night because of its lighting system, which changes its overall color scheme. There are a revolving restaurant, which takes 48 minutes to complete one rotation and sky restroom, which is artfully decorated. Visitors can also ride on cable cars or enjoy Namsan Omuri, a slanted elevator connecting Namsan Tunnel 3 to the Namsan cable car.  
Adopted from: [http://english.visitkorea.or.kr/enu/SI/SI\\_EN\\_3\\_1\\_1\\_1\\_1.jsp?cid=264550](http://english.visitkorea.or.kr/enu/SI/SI_EN_3_1_1_1_1.jsp?cid=264550) (June 17, 2015)
6. London Eye is actually a giant ferris wheel. It is located on the south side of the River Thames, close to Big Ben. London Eye measures 135 meters high × 120 meters diameter. This giant ferris wheel offers great views over London. It has 32 capsules and each capsule can carry 25 passengers, or in one complete rotation, London Eye can carry 800 passengers! However, the 32 capsules are actually numbered 1 to 33 as number 13 was left out. Each capsule is big enough for passengers to walk around. It also has air condition and comfortable seats.  
Adopted from: <http://www.ilovejourneys.com/top-10-facts-about-the-london-eye> (June 17, 2015)
7. Tokyo Tower is the world's tallest self-supporting steel power. It was opened in 1958 as a broadcasting tower and has become well-known to visitors around the world. The tower's main observatory is at 150 meters and the special observatory is at 223.5 meters, both enabling visitors to enjoy a 360-degree panoramic view of Tokyo, such as skyscrapers, Tokyo Skytree broadcasting tower and Tokyo Bay. The tower also provides an observation cafe where visitors can enjoy the view of Tokyo while drinking tea.  
Adopted from: <http://www.jnto.go.jp/eng/location/spot/comcobtw/tokyotower.html> (June 17, 2015)
8. The Arc de Triomphe is an iconic monument of France, located at the end of the Champs-Élysées, in the middle of the Place Charles de Gaulle, a large square from which no less than twelve streets emanate. It was commissioned by Napoleon in 1806 to commemorate his victories, but he was ousted before the arch was completed. The Arc de Triomphe is engraved with names of generals who commanded French troops during Napoleon's regime. It has four pillars similar in proportions and 234 steps to the top. It is adorned with many reliefs, most of them commemorating the emperor's battles, such as Napoleon's victory over Turkey

and the Battle of Austeliz, where Napoleon defeated Austria. At the top of the arch are thirty shields, each bearing the name of one of Napoleon's successful battles. Below the arch is the Grave of the Unknown Soldiers from World War I. Adopted from: <http://www.m.aviewoncities.com/paris/sacrecoeur/info.html> (June 17, 2015)



### Variasi

In pairs, mention the landmarks of three cities in Indonesia. Describe them briefly.

#### Contoh jawaban:

- Besakih Temple in Denpasar, Bali, is a sacred place for Hindus in Bali. This place is also open to the public. It is an important temple in Bali so many religious ceremonies are held here.
- Suramadu Bridge in East Java connects Surabaya city and Madura Island. The bridge stretches across the Madura Strait. Many vehicles, small and big, pass the bridge. For motorcycles' riders, it's free to cross the bridge.
- Mount Rinjani in Lombok, West Nusa Tenggara, belongs to Mount Rinjani National Park. The mountain is very famous for trekking. Within its huge caldera sits the crater Lake Segara Anak and the best moment from the peak of Mount Rinjani is to watch the sunrise.



### TASK 3

Read the following text, in turns.



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

What are the meanings of the following words?

- antique = \_\_\_\_\_
- bargaining = \_\_\_\_\_
- boat pier = \_\_\_\_\_
- to cruise = \_\_\_\_\_
- dawn = \_\_\_\_\_
- empire = \_\_\_\_\_
- massage = \_\_\_\_\_
- ornamented = \_\_\_\_\_
- reclining = \_\_\_\_\_
- riverside = \_\_\_\_\_
- roof tile = \_\_\_\_\_
- royal court = \_\_\_\_\_
- shuttle boat = \_\_\_\_\_
- skytrain = \_\_\_\_\_
- spire = \_\_\_\_\_
- sticky rice = \_\_\_\_\_
- street vendor = \_\_\_\_\_
- subway = \_\_\_\_\_
- wax statue = \_\_\_\_\_
- worth visiting = \_\_\_\_\_

#### TASK 2

Find the synonyms of the following words in the text in TASK 3. Write their meanings.

Word	Synonym	Meaning
1. sportsman (n)	_____	_____
2. clearly (adv)	_____	_____
3. stall (n)	_____	_____
4. option (n)	_____	_____
5. buy (v)	_____	_____
6. mostly (adv)	_____	_____
7. kingdom (n)	_____	_____
8. examine (v)	_____	_____
9. popular (adj)	_____	_____
10. link (v)	_____	_____
11. significant (adj)	_____	_____
12. elegantly (adv)	_____	_____
13. particular (adj)	_____	_____
14. goal (n)	_____	_____
15. attractive (adj)	_____	_____

#### Jawaban:

#### TASK 1

- barang antik
- menawar
- dermaga kapal
- berpesiar dengan kapal, berlayar
- fajar, subuh
- kerajaan
- pijat
- diberi hiasan/ornamen
- berbaring, bersandar
- tepi sungai
- genteng atap
- istana bangsawan
- kapal yang pulang-pergi
- kereta dengan jalur rel di atas
- puncak menara
- ketan
- pedagang pinggir jalan
- kereta bawah tanah
- patung lilin
- layak dikunjungi

#### TASK 2

Word	Synonym	Meaning
1. sportsman (n)	athlete	atlet, olahragawan
2. clearly (adv)	brightly	dengan jelas atau terang
3. stall (n)	booth	kios, kedai
4. option (n)	site	tempat
5. buy (v)	purchase	membeli
6. mostly (adv)	dominantly	secara mendominasi
7. kingdom (n)	empire	kerajaan
8. examine (v)	explore	menjelajah, memeriksa
9. popular (adj)	famous	terkenal, populer
10. link (v)	connect	menghubungkan
11. significant (adj)	important	penting
12. elegantly (adv)	majestically	dengan wibawa/anggun
13. particular (adj)	certain	tertentu
14. goal (n)	purpose	tujuan
15. attractive (adj)	stunning	menarik perhatian, memikat



## TASK 4

Let's pronounce the following words correctly.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik melafalkan kata-kata berikut dengan lantang, satu per satu.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru membetulkan pelafalan peserta didik yang masih kurang tepat.
3. Peserta didik melafalkan kembali kata-kata tersebut dengan lafal yang benar dan akurat.
4. Sebagai kegiatan pengembangan, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menjelaskan kembali arti kata-kata tersebut dan membuat kalimat menggunakan kata-kata tersebut.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik yang kurang aktif dalam kegiatan ini untuk aktif menyampaikan jawaban atau pendapatnya.



## Variasi

### TASK 1

What are the meanings of the words in TASK 4?

### TASK 2

Make sentences using the words in TASK 4.

### Jawaban:

#### TASK 1

- |                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. barang/benda antik | 2. minuman       |
| 3. berlayar           | 4. masakan       |
| 5. zamrud             | 6. kekaisaran    |
| 7. dermaga            | 8. puncak menara |
| 9. kereta bawah tanah | 10. patung       |

#### TASK 2 (Contoh jawaban)

1. My grandfather likes collecting **antiques**, such as old lamps and radios.
2. The cafe offers many kinds of **beverages**, but its signature beverage is tropical juice.
3. Last week I **cruised** to Karimunjawa Island and I was so excited.
4. Many Indonesia's **cuisines** are very popular in the world, like *rendang*, satay and fried rice.
5. **Emerald** is one of the world's expensive gem stones.
6. Japan opened itself to the West during the Meiji **Empire**.
7. My friends and I have been waiting for a boat at the **pier** for thirty minutes.
8. There is an arrow pointing north at the top of the building **spire**.
9. **Subway** is an alternative way to solve traffic jams in big cities, like Jakarta.
10. The children are learning how to make animal **sculptures** from wood.



## TASK 5

Work in pairs.

Ask and answer questions about the text in TASK 3, in turns.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik membentuk pasangan dengan temannya.
2. Setiap pasangan membaca dan memahami kembali isi teks pada TASK 3.
3. Setelah itu, setiap pasangan melakukan percakapan berupa tanya jawab tentang isi teks pada TASK 3, sesuai dengan contoh yang ada di buku.
4. Selama kegiatan berlangsung, Bapak/Ibu Guru mengamati kegiatan bercakap-cakap peserta didik. Bapak/Ibu Guru membantu peserta didik yang menemui kesulitan serta memotivasi peserta didik yang kurang aktif dalam kegiatan tanya jawab ini.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai atas penampilan peserta didik.

### Contoh jawaban:

You : What is the function of the Grand Palace now?

Your friend : It is used for ceremonial purposes.

You : Is there a temple in the Grand Palace?

Your friend : Yes.

You : What temple is it?

Your friend : The Temple of the Emerald Buddha, Thailand's most sacred Buddhist sculpture.

You : What are the characteristics of the buildings in the Grand Palace?

Your friend : The buildings combine European structures and traditional Thai roof tiles and spires and are dominantly gold, though the roof tiles are ornamented in blue and red.

You : You're right. Your turn now.

Your friend : Thanks. What makes Wat Pho very popular?

You : The temple houses the statue of reclining Buddha.

Your friend : How far is the temple from the Grand Palace?

You : Only ten minutes walk.

Your friend : What can visitors do in Wat Pho?

You : They can observe the temple, see the giant reclining Buddha and get a traditional Thai massage.

Your friend : What is Wat Arun called?

You : It is called the Temple of Dawn.

Your friend : Where is Wat Arun located?

You : It's located near Wat Pho, on the east bank of Chao Phraya River.

Your friend : How does one reach the place?

You : Take a boat and stop at a boat pier number 8, then board a small shuttle boat to cross Chao Phraya River.

Your friend : You have answered all the questions correctly. Your turn, please.

You : O.K. Let's talk about cruising Chao Phraya River. What are the roles of this river for people of Bangkok?

Your friend : A means of transportation and trading.

You : What did European travelers call Bangkok a long time ago?

Your friend : Venice of the East.

You : In your opinion, why was it called that?

Your friend : Because there is a big river flowing in the middle of Bangkok city which is very crucial for Bangkok's people's every day life.

You : I guess so. Now, your turn.

Your friend : Thanks. What is the biggest weekend market in Thailand?

You : Chatuchak Market.

Your friend : Why is it called the weekend market?  
 You : Because it only opens at weekends: Fridays (half day), Saturday and Sunday (all day).  
 Your friend : What items are sold in the market?  
 You : Many kinds of items from every part of Thailand, such as clothing and accessories, ceramics, furniture and home decorations, food and beverages, plants and gardening tools, handicrafts, antiques and collectibles.  
 Your friend : What does one need to get good quality items at low prices?  
 You : Good bargaining skills.  
 Your friend : Correct. Your turn, please.  
 You : Have you eaten original Thai food?  
 Your friend : Yes. I have tasted *tom yum goong*.  
 You : Tell me. What is the characteristic of original Thai cuisine?  
 Your friend : It is mostly hot and spicy.  
 You : What is *khao pad*?  
 Your friend : It is Thai fried rice.  
 You : Then, what is mango sticky rice like?  
 Your friend : It's sticky rice topped with thick and sweet coconut milk and eaten with sliced sweet mango.  
 You : Correct. Your turn now.  
 Your friend : What do you know about Madame Tussaud Wax Museum?  
 You : The museum displays wax statues of famous and important people, like the world's politicians, athletes, scientists, artists and top celebrities.  
 Your friend : There are several Madame Tussaud Wax Museum in the world. Where is it located in Thailand?  
 You : It is located in Siam Discovery Center, Bangkok.  
 Your friend : Which presidents can you meet in the museum?  
 You : Presidents Soekarno and Barrack Obama.  
 Your friend : What should you do if you want to buy a discounted price ticket?  
 You : I should buy the ticket online and enter the museum before 12 p.m.  
 Your friend : That's right. Your turn.  
 You : What is Thailand's traditional vehicle called?  
 Your friend : *Tuk-tuk*.  
 You : What types of river transportation are available for the public?  
 Your friend : Chao Phraya Express and Khlong.  
 You : What are MRT and BTS?  
 Your friend : MRT is a subway, while BTS is a skytrain.  
 You : What are their functions?  
 Your friend : To connect the main shopping, entertainment and business areas of the city, like Siam, Sukhumvit and Silom.  
 You : Good! All your answers are correct.



### Variasi

Complete the following statements based on the text in TASK 3.

1. The text is about \_\_\_\_\_.
2. If you visit Bangkok, the first thing to do is \_\_\_\_\_.
3. If you explore the Grand Palace complex, there is a famous temple called \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If you notice the buildings, you'll find out that most of them are \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The second thing to do is \_\_\_\_\_.

6. If you want to go to Wat Pho after visiting the Grand Palace, it's only a \_\_\_\_\_.
7. If you are tired after walking around the temple, you can get \_\_\_\_\_.
8. If you want to go to Wat Arun after visiting Wat Pho, you should \_\_\_\_\_.
9. If you see Wat Arun in the evening, you will see the temple \_\_\_\_\_.
10. If you take a cruise along Chao Phraya River, you will see \_\_\_\_\_.
11. If you are looking for souvenirs at low prices, you should \_\_\_\_\_.
12. If you want to shop at Chatuchak Market, you need \_\_\_\_\_.
13. If you can only go to the market in the afternoon, you should go there on \_\_\_\_\_.
14. If you are fond of eating, you should taste \_\_\_\_\_.
15. If you like sweet and refreshing food, you should try \_\_\_\_\_.
16. If you want to be photographed with famous celebrities, you should \_\_\_\_\_.
17. If you want to get discounted ticket prices, \_\_\_\_\_.
18. If you visit Bangkok, the last thing to do is \_\_\_\_\_.
19. If you want to go to shopping malls in Siam, you could travel on \_\_\_\_\_.
20. If you want to explore historical sites at the riverside, you should \_\_\_\_\_.

### Jawaban:

1. seven things to do in Bangkok
2. explore the Grand Palace to discover where the residence of the late Thailand Empire
3. Temple of the Emerald Buddha
4. in gold color, though the roof tiles are ornamented in blue and red
5. visit Wat Pho and Wat Arun, the two most worth-visiting temples in Thailand
6. ten minute walk
7. a traditional Thai massage
8. go to boat pier number 8 and board a small shuttle boat to cross the Chao Phraya River
9. shine with its golden lights
10. many traditional, religious and modern buildings along the riverside
11. go to Chatuchak Market
12. good bargaining skills
13. Saturday or Sunday
14. original Thai cuisines
15. mango sticky rice
16. go to Madame Tussaud Wax Museum
17. purchase the tickets online and enter the museum before 12 p.m.
18. travel around Bangkok city using all kinds of public transportation
19. a BTS or MRT
20. board Chao Phraya Express or Khlong



## TASK 7

Answer the questions based on the dialogs in TASK 6.

**Jawaban:**

### Dialog 1

1. At the currency store or bank.
2. He is going to change his Rupiah for Thai Baht.
3. Rp393,300.
4. He is probably going to Thailand.
5. Around 5,085 Baht.

### Dialog 2

1. Next Saturday morning.
2. So he has plenty of time to take in a city tour.
3. She offers to take Arya to the airport.
4. He refuses Ranti's offer.
5. To deliver her camera.



## TASK 8

Arrange the following sentences to form sequential dialogs. Then, practice the dialogs with a friend.

**Jawaban:**

The correct arrangements of the sentences are:

Dialog 1: 7-11-5-13-1-8-6-12-4-10-3-9-2,

Dialog 2: 3-10-5-8-4-11-6-9-1-7-2.



## TASK 9

Identify the expressions of offering help in the dialogs in TASK 8. Share your work with the class.

**Jawaban:**

Offering Help	Responding
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• So, may I help you?</li> <li>• May I help you?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Certainly, I'd be very grateful.</li> <li>• With pleasure.</li> </ul>



## Variasi

Complete the following statements based on the dialogs in TASK 8.

### Dialog 1

1. Jerry tells Dina about \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The first thing to do when using the machine is \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Dina is going to \_\_\_\_\_.
4. After inserting the coins, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Dina thanks Jerry for \_\_\_\_\_.

### Dialog 2

1. When Keke arrives, Mika is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Mika hasn't answered \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Keke \_\_\_\_\_, to finish the puzzle.
4. The answer of the question is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The clock is located in \_\_\_\_\_.

**Jawaban:**

### Dialog 1

1. how to use a ticketing machine
2. press the destination station
3. Saphan Taksin Station
4. the tickets will come out of the machine
5. his help



## TASK 10

Complete the following sentences with suitable expressions of offering and responses.

Then, practice the dialogs with a friend.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. Aska : Wow, that's a big suitcase! It must be heavy. **Let me help you lift it.**  
Gani : **Thanks. That's what I really need.**
2. Lisa : What's wrong with you, Dian? You look gloomy.  
Dian : I'd like to go to the supermarket, but my motorcycle's tire is flat.  
Lisa : **I'll give you a ride then.** I am going to the supermarket too.  
Dian : **What a coincidence! Thanks.**
3. Barry : Have you finished your Indonesian paper?  
Nela : No, I haven't. My computer is broken so I haven't typed it.  
Barry : Sorry to hear that. **If you don't mind, you may use mine.**  
Nela : **May I? Thank you.**
4. Desta : Excuse me. You look confused. **Is there anything I can do?**  
Fifi : **Yes, please.** I've been searching for this address for an hour, but I haven't found it yet. Could you tell me where it is?  
Desta : Oh, fortunately, it's near my house. **Let me take you there. Please follow me.**  
Fifi : **What a relief! Thank you very much.**  
Desta : You're welcome.



## TASK 12

Make sentences using if clauses followed by imperatives or suggestions, based on the following situations.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. If you go to the computer fair this afternoon, you should go there before 3 p.m.
2. If you have finished using the computer, please shut it down.
3. If you want to visit your friend's mother in hospital, you should take fruits.



### TASK 13

In pairs, develop the sentences you have written in TASK 12 into sequential dialogs.  
Practice the dialogs in front of the class.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik bekerja berpasangan.
2. Setiap pasangan membaca kembali situasi-situasi soal dan kalimat-kalimat yang telah mereka tulis berdasarkan situasi tersebut, pada **TASK 12**.
3. Setiap pasangan mengembangkan kalimat-kalimat tersebut menjadi percakapan yang sesuai dengan konteks situasinya.
4. Saat peserta didik bercakap-cakap, Bapak/Ibu Guru mengamati kinerja peserta didik. Bapak/Ibu Guru membantu peserta didik yang menemui kesulitan dan memotivasi peserta didik yang kurang aktif.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk memeragakan percakapan yang telah dilakukannya di depan kelas.
6. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak penampilan temannya, lalu memberi masukan.
7. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai atas penampilan peserta didik.

#### Contoh jawaban:

1. Your friend : Have you seen the computer fair?  
You : Yes. I went there yesterday. You?  
Your friend : I'll go there this afternoon.  
You : I see. Anyway, if you go to the computer fair this afternoon, you should go there before 3 p.m.  
Your friend : Why?  
You : If you go there before 3 p.m., the place is not too crowded, so you can explore the fair comfortably. However, if you go there after 3 p.m., it will be very difficult for you, even to move from one booth to another. Trust me.  
Your friend : O.K. Thanks for your suggestion.
2. Your brother : Have you done your typing?  
You : No, but I'm almost finished.  
Your brother : If you have finished using it, please shut it down.  
You : O.K.
3. You : Where are you going, Tia?  
Your sister : I'm going to visit Lia's mother at hospital.  
You : Are you going by yourself?  
Your sister : No. I'm going with Farah. We've promised to meet at the bus stop at 3 p.m.  
You : O.K., but why are you empty handed?  
Your sister : What do you mean?  
You : If you want to visit a sick person, you should take fruits.  
Your sister : You're right. O.K., I'll speak to Farah.



### Variasi

Create dialogs based on the following situations.  
Use expressing of if clauses followed by imperatives or suggestions.

#### The situations:

1. You want to continue your studies at a reputable university. Therefore, you must study hard so you graduate with excellent scores.
2. You intend to keep a pet and it will be a rabbit. You ask for your mother's permission and she tells you to take care of the pet well.

#### Contoh jawaban:

1. Your friend : Where will you continue your studies?  
You : Technology Institute of Bandung.  
Your friend : That's one of the most reputable universities in our country. It means, you must graduate with excellent scores.  
You : That's right.  
Your friend : If you want to graduate with excellent scores, you must study hard from now.  
You : I will.
2. You : Mom, I'd like to keep a pet. May I?  
Your mother : What pet?  
You : A rabbit. There's a lovely rabbit in the pet shop downtown.  
Your mother : If you keep a pet, you must take care of it well. Feed it and clean its cage regularly. Can you do it?  
You : I can do it, Mom. I promise.  
Your mother : Alright, you may keep a pet.  
You : Thanks, Mom.



### TASK 14

Fill in the blanks with the suitable words from the box.

#### Jawaban:

1. d   2. i   3. o   4. l   5. n   6. j   7. b  
8. p   9. c   10. m   11. f   12. a   13. k   14. e  
15. g



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Find the meanings of the following words or phrases.

Word/Phrase	Meaning
1. admission fee	_____
2. alternate	_____
3. antiquity	_____
4. extravagant	_____
5. wide-ranging	_____
6. immense	_____
7. inclement weather	_____
8. must-do	_____
9. once in a lifetime	_____
10. open-top red double dekker bus	_____
11. overwhelming	_____
12. private quarter	_____
13. regal grandeur	_____
14. roundabout	_____
15. shrine	_____
16. sightseeing	_____
17. take a peek	_____
18. trove	_____
19. urns of Greece	_____
20. vantage point	_____



**TASK 2**

Complete the statements based on the text in TASK 14.

- The text is about \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you want to have a look at the royal residence, \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you don't have enough money to join a tour of the palace, you can witness \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you want to broaden your knowledge about the works of man from prehistoric to modern times, \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you visit the museum on Monday at 6 p.m., \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you want an expansive view of London city, you should \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you want to enjoy the city from a higher vantage point, \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you visit National History Museum, you will see \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you join experts in the Darwn Center's hightech Attenborough studio, you will have opportunities to take part in \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you ride on London Eye, you can enjoy \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you want to get around London safely and cheaply, \_\_\_\_\_.
- In a tube station, if you don't know where to buy tickets, \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you just want to go window shopping, \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you visit Harrods, London's famous department store, you will have an experience in \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you hang out at Piccadilly Circus, you will \_\_\_\_\_.

**TASK 3**

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 14.

- When is the Buckingham Palace open for tour?
- What is the function of the State Room?
- What free attraction does the Palace offers?
- When is the attraction usually held?
- What makes the first visit seem overwhelming?
- When does the museum open?
- What is the structure of the Tower Bridge built from?
- When is the best time to stroll across the bridge?
- What is the advantage of joining a tour of the Tower Bridge Exhibition?
- What can visitors see in Central Hall?
- Where can visitors see a model blue whale?
- What is London Eye actually?
- What is the most iconic transport in London?
- Why should visitors take a tube to get around London?
- Why should not we worry when taking a tube for the first time?
- What is the most London's famous shopping mall?
- Why should visitors go to Harrods?
- Who was the former owner of Harrods?
- What is Piccadilly Circus?
- What makes Piccadilly Circus attractive at night?

**Jawaban:****TASK 1**

Word/Phrase	Meaning
1. admission fee	biaya masuk
2. alternate	berselang, berganti hari
3. antiquity	barang-barang peninggalan zaman kuno
4. extravagant	luar biasa, megah
5. wide-ranging	yang meliputi banyak hal
6. immense	besar sekali
7. inclement weather	cuaca buruk
8. must-do	hal yang harus dilakukan
9. once in a lifetime	sekali seumur hidup
10. open-top red double dekker bus	bus tingkat merah yang atapnya terbuka
11. overwhelming	berlimpah
12. private quarter	kediaman pribadi
13. regal grandeur	kemuliaan/kebesaran yang agung
14. roundabout	jalan berputar, bundaran
15. shrine	tempat suci, kuil
16. sightseeing	tamasya, berkeliling sambil melihat-lihat
17. take a peek	mengintip
18. trove	harta
19. urns of Greece	semacam kendi atau jambangan besar dari Yunani
20. vantage point	tempat yang menguntungkan/paling baik

**TASK 2**

- eight things to do in London
- take a tour of Buckingham Palace
- the Changing of the Guard, also referred to Guard Mounting
- explore the British Museum
- the museum will have been closed
- head to Tower Bridge
- consider a tour of the Tower Bridge Exhibition
- hundreds of exciting and interactive exhibits, including a collection of the biggest, tallest and rarest animals in the world
- topical discussions about science and nature
- great views of London's south bank
- board a tube
- read the signs, overhead and on the walls of the station
- go to Harrods, London's famous department store
- the magnificent Egyptian elevator
- see street performers or busy business types and travelers

**TASK 3**

- In the summer when the Queen is away on vacation.
- To host guests for State ceremonials and official affairs.
- The Changing of the Guard (also referred to Guard Mounting).
- It is held daily at 11:30 a.m., from May until late July and on alternate days the rest of the year, except during inclement weather.
- The immense collection of the museum.
- It opens on Saturday through Thursday from 10 a.m. until 5:30 p.m. and on Fridays until 8:30 p.m.
- Stone and steel.
- In the late afternoon when the sun is setting.
- The tour will take us to the top of the bridge, as well as the bottom, with exhibits and displays on the bridge's inner workings and history.
- The museum's iconic Diplodocus skeleton.
- In Mammals display.
- It is a giant ferris wheel which circles around slowly.
- The red double-decker bus.
- Because there are many tube stations, 275 of which 63 stations are in central London, and it is a smart, safe and cheap to get around London.
- Because there are signs everywhere—overhead and on the walls—telling us what to do and where to us tickets.
- Harrods.
- Because the place is both very attractive and unique, from the magnificent Egyptian elevator to the extravagant Old World interiors, and it fills with regal grandeur.
- Dodi Al Fayed's father.
- It is technically a traffic roundabout in the heart of London.
- The bright lights.



## TASK 15

Identify the 'if clauses' followed by imperatives and suggestions in the text in TASK 14.

Share your work with the class.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik mengidentifikasi klausa pengandaian (*if clause*) yang diikuti oleh perintah/saran yang terdapat dalam teks di TASK 15, misalnya dengan menggaris-bawahi klausa tersebut.
2. Setelah waktu yang ditentukan habis, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menyampaikan hasil pekerjaannya.
3. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan menyampaikan jawabannya apabila berbeda dengan jawaban temannya.
4. Sebagai kegiatan pengembangan, peserta didik diminta untuk mengidentifikasi maksud atau tujuan setiap kalimat pengandaian tersebut.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai atas pekerjaan peserta didik.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. If you visit London, take a tour of Buckingham Palace, the London home of Queen Elizabeth II.
2. If you rather not pay admission fees, you can still experience Buckingham Palace by witnessing the Changing of the Guard (also referred to Guard Mounting), ....
3. If you visit London, explore the British Museum, one of London's top free attractions.
4. If you decide it to be one of your destinations, visit the museum Saturday through Thursday from 10 a.m. until 5:30 p.m. and on Fridays until 8:30 p.m.
5. If you visit London, enjoy London's landscape from Tower Bridge.
6. If you—like many other London tourists—want an expansive view of the city, you should head to Tower Bridge.
7. However, if you're interested in viewing the city from a higher vantage point, about 138 feet, consider a tour of the Tower Bridge Exhibition.
8. If you visit London, broaden your knowledge by visiting National History Museum, one of London's most beautiful landmark buildings.
9. If you visit London, ride on London Eye which delivers great views of London city.
10. If you visit London, take a trip around London by open-top red double-decker bus or tube.
11. If it's your first time riding on the London tube, you don't need to worry.
12. If you visit London, go to Harrods, London's famous department store.
13. Even if you're not planning to purchase anything at this store, you should take a peek inside.
14. If you visit London, hang out in Piccadilly Circus.



## TASK 16

What is your favorite city in the world?

Write a note or list about what visitors can do or enjoy when visiting the city.

### Contoh jawaban:

#### If you visit Tokyo:

1. Catch live tuna auctions at Tsukiji Fish Market, the world's largest, busiest fish market.

2. Take a look at Meiji Shrine, Tokyo's most famous Shinto shrine, dedicated to the late 19th-century emperor who opened Japan to the West.
3. Have a picnic at the East Garden of the Imperial Palace.
4. Enjoy the beauty of Shinjuku Gyoen National Garden for refreshing your bodies and minds.
5. Learn the history of Tokyo by visiting Edo-Tokyo Museum.
6. Observe the city from Tokyo Tower, the world's tallest steel tower at 333 meters.
7. Take a walk across the famous intersection outside Shibuya Station.
8. Go to Tokyo Metropolitan Government Tower to observe the city views.



## TASK 17

Develop the note or list you have made in TASK 16 into a sequential text.

Use 'if clauses' followed by imperatives or suggestions. Share your work with the class.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik diminta membaca kembali daftar atau *tips* hal-hal yang pengunjung dapat lakukan ketika mengunjungi kota tersebut, yang telah ditulisnya di TASK sebelumnya.
2. Peserta didik diminta mengembangkan kalimat-kalimat yang telah ditulisnya menjadi teks berbentuk *tips* yang panjang.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengamati kegiatan peserta didik dan membantu mereka apabila menemui kesulitan.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengingatkan peserta didik untuk menggunakan kalimat pengandaian yang diikuti perintah atau saran.
5. Setelah selesai, Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk membacakan jawabannya. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan memberi masukan tentang pekerjaan temannya.
6. Pada akhir kegiatan, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mengumpulkan hasil pekerjaannya. Bapak/Ibu Guru memeriksa dan memberi nilai.

### Contoh jawaban:

Tokyo is a marvelous mix of modern living and old-fashioned manners, high-tech gadgets and curtesy cartoon mascots. It's terribly crowded, yet can be strangely quiet. It's home to the understated and the wacky and you often find them right next to each other on the sidewalk. That's the beauty of this not-so-pretty city—that and the fabulous food and unparalleled mass transit system. There are shrines and stone lanterns and other traces of old Japan scattered among the syscrapers, swanky shopping malls and hole-in-the-wall noodle shops.

If you visit Tokyo, here's how to see the loveliest—and liveliest-sides of Tokyo in a day or two.

1. Catch live tuna auctions at Tsukiji Fish Market, the world's largest, busiest fish market. The auction is the main reason travelers or tourists fill the market at predawn hours. So, if you want to go there, arrive at the market before 5 a.m. because it will be on a first-come, first-serve basis and limited to 120 people, admitted in two shifts of 60. If you prefer to do your exploring at a more reasonable hour, keep in mind that by 9 a.m., business will have already started to wind down. You'll still see fishmongers filleting the day's catch, but you won't have to dodge so many trucks and trolleys. One more thing, if you go to the market, don't miss a sushi breakfast. There are plenty of sushi counters there.

2. Take a look at Meiji Shrine, Tokyo's most famous Shinto shrine, dedicated to the late 19th-century emperor who opened Japan to the West. The shrine is wonderfully serene and austere, not colorful or flashy like other Asian places of worship. When visiting the shrine, you can write wishes on little pieces of paper and tie them onto the prayer wall, or do as the locals do—toss amount of yen into the offering box, bow your head twice, clap twice and bow once more. On Sunday mornings, you are likely to see a traditional wedding procession through the courtyard—the bride in a white kimono and hood and the groom in his formal black robe, walking together under a big red parasol, with Shinto priests leading the way and the rest of the wedding party trailing behind.
3. Have a picnic in the East Garden of the Imperial Palace. Unlike other tourist spots which is crowded with visitors, the Imperial Palace lacks of crowds to an application policy, which limits the number of visitors. So, if you want to visit the palace, reserve entrance tickets several weeks in advance to ensure admittance. The most favorite spot in the palace is the flourishing green space East Gardens which are free and accessible for guests year-round and have plenty of shady spots to recline and open fields to picnic.
4. Enjoy the beauty of Shinjuku Gyoen National Garden for refreshing your bodies and minds. Don't forget to ask a map before exploring the place because the place has four major gardens: English Landscape, French Formal, Japanese Traditional (with teahouse) and Mother and Child Forest. There's also a lovely Taiwan Pavilion. During cherry blossom season, between late March and early April, the central lawn areas are particularly stunning. People love to have a picnic during the season.
5. Learn the history of Tokyo by visiting Edo-Tokyo Museum. If you want to really get to know Tokyo, head to the gigantic Edo-Tokyo Museum. This expertly designed museum recreates the history of the city with large-scale models of important events and architectural monuments. You can walk through Tokyo's humble origins, to its rising skyscrapers, past the devastation of WWII and into modern metropolis.
6. Observe the city from Tokyo Tower, the world's tallest steel tower at 333 meters. It functions as a radio and television broadcasting structure as well as a tourist destination. The tower has two observation decks; one at 150 meters and the other at 250 meters. From the second deck, you'll catch the sight of Mount Fuji and get a better idea of Tokyo's sprawling nature. This tower is easily recognized from all over the city due to its red and white spire.
7. Take a walk across the famous intersection outside Shibuya Station. On sunny afternoons or clear evenings, the surrounding area is packed with shoppers, students, young couples and commuters. When the lights turn red at this busy junction, they all turn red at the same time in every direction. Traffic stops completely and pedestrian surge into the intersection from all sides, like marbles spilling out of a box.
8. Go to Tokyo Metropolitan Government Tower to observe the city views. If you go to Tokyo Tower, you need to pay admission fees. However, in Tokyo Metropolitan Government Tower, you can observe the city from two observatories provided, without shedding any yen. One of the observatories is open between 9:30 a.m. and 11 p.m. daily! If you want to get the best view, arrive at the tower in the late afternoon to early evening, to watch the sunset and Tokyo switch on its evening lights.

Adopted from:

- [http://content.time.com/time/travel/cityguide/article\\_0,31489,1897812\\_1897772\\_1897705.html](http://content.time.com/time/travel/cityguide/article_0,31489,1897812_1897772_1897705.html) (June 22, 2015)
- [http://travel.usnews.com/Tokyo\\_Japan/Things\\_To\\_Do](http://travel.usnews.com/Tokyo_Japan/Things_To_Do) (June 22, 2015)



## TASK 19

Read the song lyrics.  
What is the message?

**Jawaban:**

The message of the song is we should be faithful.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. D   2. B   3. B   4. A   5. E  
6. A   7. D   8. C   9. C   10. E

B. Create a dialog using expressions of offering.

**Contoh jawaban:**

Amira : Good afternoon. May I help you?

Farah : Good afternoon. Yes, please. Do you have a book entitled "A Trip to Korea"?

Amira : Yes, we have three copies left. How many would you like to buy?

Farah : Only one, please.

Amira : O.K., I'll get it for you.

Farah : Thank you.

# UNIT II

## What do You Learn?

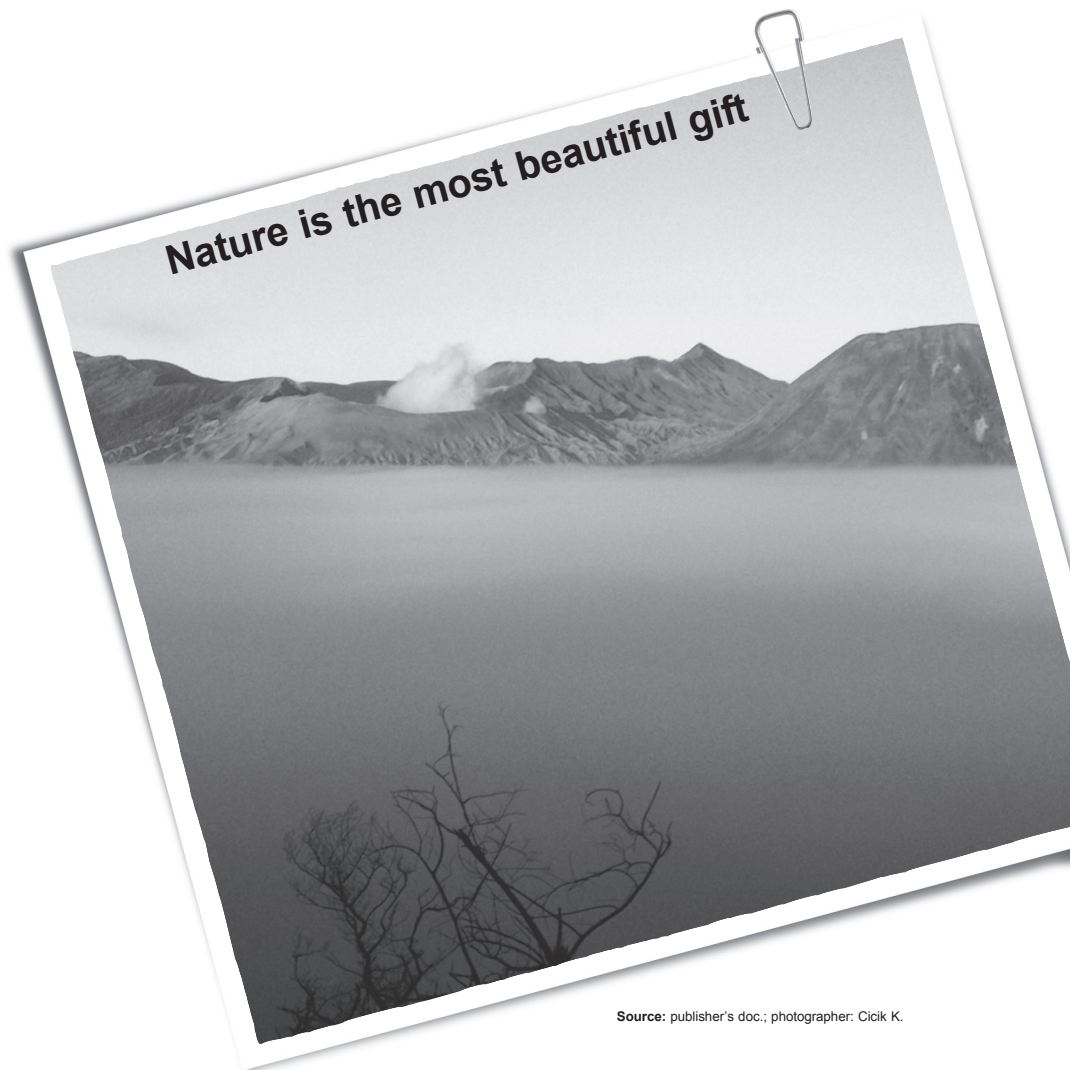
### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. identify the social function, structure and linguistic features used in captions,
  - b. understand the messages in captions, and
  - c. write texts to accompany illustrations (captions).
2. be able to:
  - a. identify the social function, structure and linguistic features used in captions,
  - b. understand the messages in captions, and
  - c. write texts to accompany illustrations (captions).

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be honest, disciplined, confident and responsible in communicating with others.



Look at the picture! What does the caption mean? What message do you receive from the caption?

In this unit you will learn how to understand captions and write texts to accompany illustrations (captions). Please understand and attempt all the tasks thoroughly.



## TASK 1

Listen and repeat.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memperhatikan teks penyerta gambar di buku.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru membacakan kalimat-kalimat dalam gambar dan peserta didik diminta menirukan dengan lafal dan intonasi yang benar.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik tunjuk jari untuk membaca nyaring teks penyerta gambar tersebut. Peserta didik yang lain diminta mendengarkan dengan saksama.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru mencermati pelafalan peserta didik dan membetulkan pelafalan yang belum tepat.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberikan balikan.



## TASK 2

Listen and answer the questions you have heard based on the captions in TASK 1.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca kembali dan memahami isi teks penyerta gambar pada TASK 1.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan pertanyaan-pertanyaan berikut satu per satu dan peserta didik menyimak.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan kembali pertanyaan-pertanyaan tersebut satu per satu dan memotivasi peserta didik untuk tunjuk jari menjawab pertanyaan tersebut.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai.

### Pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

1. What do friends mean?
2. Where can you find comfort and calm?
3. What can make the world better?
4. Where will positive thinking lead you?
5. Where does success come from?

### Jawaban:

1. Friends mean people who smile brightly, laugh loudly and enjoy longevity.
2. In a family.
3. Education.
4. To a positive life.
5. Our dreams.



## TASK 3

Listen and write down the sentences you have heard under the correct pictures, to make meaningful captions.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memperhatikan gambar di buku.
2. Kemudian, Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan kalimat-kalimat dan peserta didik diminta mendengarkan dengan

saksama sambil menulis kalimat-kalimat tersebut di bawah gambar yang sesuai sehingga membentuk teks penyerta gambar (*captions*) yang bermakna.

3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan kembali kalimat-kalimat tersebut dan peserta didik diminta mendengarkan dengan saksama dan memeriksa kalimat-kalimat yang mereka tulis serta kesesuaian dengan gambar.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas teks penyerta gambar (*captions*) bersama-sama.

### Kalimat-kalimat yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

1. Knowledge is not about age, but education, learning and experience.
2. Give me a tree to save Earth.
3. Just believe in yourselves that you can do it.
4. Make your days as beautiful as a blooming flower.
5. Graduation is not final but a step towards the future.

### Jawaban:



Source: publisher's doc.; photographer: Bima  
Make your days as beautiful as a blooming flower.



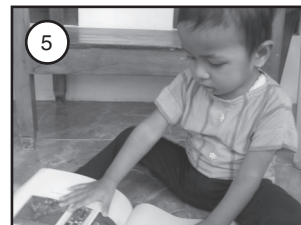
Source: publisher's doc.; photographer: Dilla Eka L.  
Give me a tree to save Earth.



Source: publisher's doc.; photographer: Dilla Eka L.  
Graduation is not final but a step towards the future.



Source: <http://www.djarumsuper.com>, downloaded June 26, 2015  
Just believe in yourselves that you can do it.



Source: publisher's doc.; photographer: Dilla Eka L.  
Knowledge is not about age, but education, learning and experience.



### TASK 4

Answer the following questions based on the captions in TASK 3.

**Jawaban:**

- 1st caption is about life.
  - 2nd caption is about saving Earth.
  - 3rd caption is about graduation.
  - 4th caption is about self-confidence.
  - 5th caption is about knowledge.
- We should make it pleasant.
  - Planting trees.
  - Because after graduation we venture into the future.
  - We should believe in ourselves.
  - Knowledge comes from education, learning and experience.



### TASK 5

Write the messages of the captions in TASK 3.

**Petunjuk Guru**

- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami kembali teks penyerta gambar (*captions*) di TASK 3.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menulis pesan yang terdapat dalam teks penyerta gambar (*captions*) tersebut.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik tunjuk jari membacakan jawabannya.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik menyimpulkan pesan yang terdapat dalam teks penyerta gambar (*captions*) bersama-sama.

**Jawaban:**

Caption	Message
Caption 1	The writer wants to persuade the readers that they should make their lives happy and pleasant as a beautiful blooming flower.
Caption 2	The writer wants to persuade the readers to plant trees because trees can save Earth.
Caption 3	The writer wants to show those who graduated from university or college that their future lives have just begun.
Caption 4	The writer wants to persuade the readers that they have to believe in themselves so they will be capable of doing whatever they wish to.
Caption 5	The writer informs that knowledge is not determined by age, but from education, learning and experience.



### Variasi

**TASK 1**

Listen and write down the captions you have heard.

**Kalimat-kalimat yang dibacakan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

- The prettiest language is a smile.
- Hard work is a powerful weapon to beat talent.
- Success starts from the first step.
- You can grab the world with books.

**TASK 2**

Answer the questions based on the captions you have written in TASK 1.

- What is the best greeting?
- What should people do to become talented?
- How do people achieve success?
- What should people do to know about the world?

**TASK 3**

Write the messages of the captions you have written in TASK 1.

Caption	Message
Caption 1	
Caption 2	
Caption 3	
Caption 4	

**Jawaban:**

**TASK 1**

- The prettiest language is a smile.
- Hard work is a powerful weapon to beat talent.
- Success starts from the first step.
- You can grab the world with books.

**TASK 2**

- It is smile.
- They should work hard.
- They start from the first step.
- They should read books.

**TASK 3 (Contoh jawaban)**

Caption	Message
Caption 1	The writer wants to show that a smile is the best way to greet others.
Caption 2	The writer wants to show that people who don't have talent can be more successful than talented people when they work hard.
Caption 3	The writer wants to show that the first step of our efforts can lead to success, so we should not be afraid to step ahead to success.
Caption 4	The writer wants to show that people will know about the world from reading books.



## TASK 6

Arrange the following sentences in the correct order to form a sequential dialog.

Then, practice the dialog with a friend.

### Jawaban:

The correct arrangement of the sentences is 4–8–1–9–3–6–5–7–2.



## Variasi

Complete the statements based on the dialog in TASK 6.

1. Tyas and Yuda are talking about \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Yuda says that the word accompanying the nature images \_\_\_\_\_.
3. According to Tyas, the messages of motivation captions are \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Tyas has written captions about \_\_\_\_\_ for her social media.
5. Yuda will make captions using \_\_\_\_\_.

### Jawaban:

1. captions they like
2. makes him feel as if he is there
3. to motivate her to do better
4. motivation, life, dreams and success
5. nature photos



## TASK 8

Match the words in column A with their suitable meanings in column B.

### Jawaban:

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. h | 2. d | 3. j | 4. a | 5. i  |
| 6. k | 7. c | 8. f | 9. b | 10. e |



## TASK 9

In pairs, create a dialog based on the captions in TASK 7.

Use the clues as the guideline.

Then, practice the dialog.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik memahami kembali teks penyerta gambar (*captions*) di TASK 7.
2. Dengan arahan dan bimbingan Bapak/Ibu Guru, peserta didik membuat percakapan berdasarkan teks penyerta gambar (*captions*) di TASK 7. Peserta didik menggunakan petunjuk yang tersedia sebagai panduan.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik mempraktikkan percakapan tersebut dengan membawa teks penyerta gambar (*captions*) di buku PR sebagai alat peraga.
4. Setelah selesai, Bapak/Ibu Guru memberikan balikan dan nilai.

### Contoh jawaban:

You : What do you think about the captions?

Your friend : I think they have good messages which motivate each of us to have a better life.

You : Which one do you think is a good caption?

Your friend : I think the first one.

You : Why do you think so?

Your friend : The words are arranged interestingly and gives a clear message about friendship. Besides, the words clearly represent the picture. I like the picture too. A girl is holding her best friends' hands while running in the field without fear. It really describes best friends. What about you?

You : I think the fourth caption is the best because it gives a message about life. The writer wants to remind us that our lives never stop, like waves, so we have to keep moving.

Your friend : I see. By the way, which one is not a good caption?

You : I think the second picture is not a good caption.

Your friend : Can you explain why it is not a good caption?

You : I actually like the words and the message, but there is no picture. I don't think it will attract people to read.

Your friend : I agree.



## TASK 10

Work in groups.

Find two captions and discuss whether they are good, what their messages are and what the grammar is used.

Share your work with the class.

### Contoh jawaban:

#### Caption 1

Home is the best place for rest.

#### Caption 2

Friends are the flowers of the garden of life.  
They always make our lives more beautiful.

### Discussion:

You : I think these captions are good, don't you think so?

Your friend : Yes, I do. The first caption has a good meaning about home. I feel comfortable at home when I feel tired or depressed.

You : I agree with you. The second caption has a good message too. It shows the importance of friends in our lives.

Your friend : You are right. What about the grammar used?

You : They use present tense.



## TASK 11

Listen and complete the captions based on what you have heard.

Teks-teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru dan jawaban:

#### Caption 1

Parents show their children (1) **how big the world** is.  
 Parents allow their children to (2) **find the key** that opens the world.  
 Parents give their children (3) **plenty of time** and space to explore the (4) **miracles** of the world.  
 Parents guide their children to find the means of life, (5) **their own way**.  
 Parents maintain the family's peace and love.

**Caption 2**

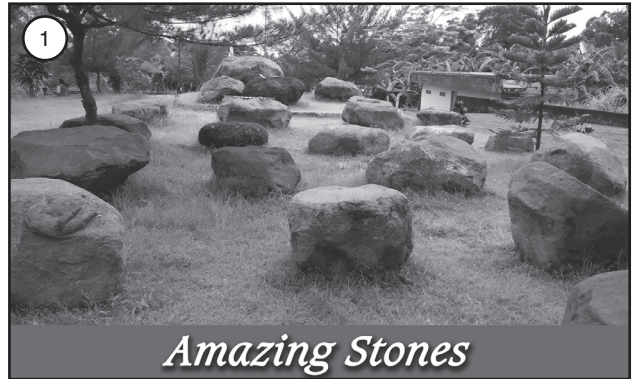
When (1) **darkness** enters your heart, your mouth (2) **whispers** to your ear, "Don't lose your hopes," your brain commands, (3) **"Never give up,"** your legs step and say, (4) **"I can do it,"** and your eyes see (5) **bright light**.



**TASK 13**

Work in pairs.  
Each of you looks for two pictures.  
Ask your partner to write words, phrases or sentences on each picture.

Contoh jawaban:



Source: publisher's doc.; photographer: Bima



Source: publisher's doc.; photographer: Andri



**Variasi**

**TASK 1**

Find the synonyms of the following words in the captions in TASK 11.

What are their meanings?

Read and memorize the words.

Word	Synonym	Meaning
1. to lead	_____	_____
2. to murmur	_____	_____
3. to pace	_____	_____
4. room	_____	_____
5. to surrender	_____	_____
6. glow	_____	_____
7. blackness	_____	_____
8. to rove	_____	_____
9. expectation	_____	_____
10. to instruct	_____	_____

Jawaban:

Word	Synonym	Meaning
1. to lead	to guide	membimbing
2. to murmur	to whisper	berbisik
3. to pace	to step	melangkah
4. room	space	ruang
5. to surrender	to give up	menyerah
6. glow	light	sinar
7. blackness	darkness	kegelapan
8. to rove	to explore	menjelajah
9. expectation	hope	harapan
10. to instruct	to command	memerintah



**TASK 12**

Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

Jawaban:

1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. D



**TASK 14**

Write sentences based on the following pictures in order to create meaningful captions.

Contoh jawaban:

- The best you is when you benefit others.
- Be strong like a reef which withstands swift waves.
- You are the best gift from God which makes my life more meaningful.
- Amazing heritage from our ancestors.
- Thank you for being my best friend.





## TASK 16

Read the song lyrics.  
What is the message?

**Contoh jawaban:**

The message of the song is that when you believe in God and trust in God, miracles will happen.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. B   2. A   3. E   4. D   5. E  
6. B   7. B   8. C   9. D   10. A

B. Make a caption based on your own idea.

**Contoh jawaban:**

Friends never let you alone in your sadness.

# UNIT III

## Observe Our Endangered Wildlife



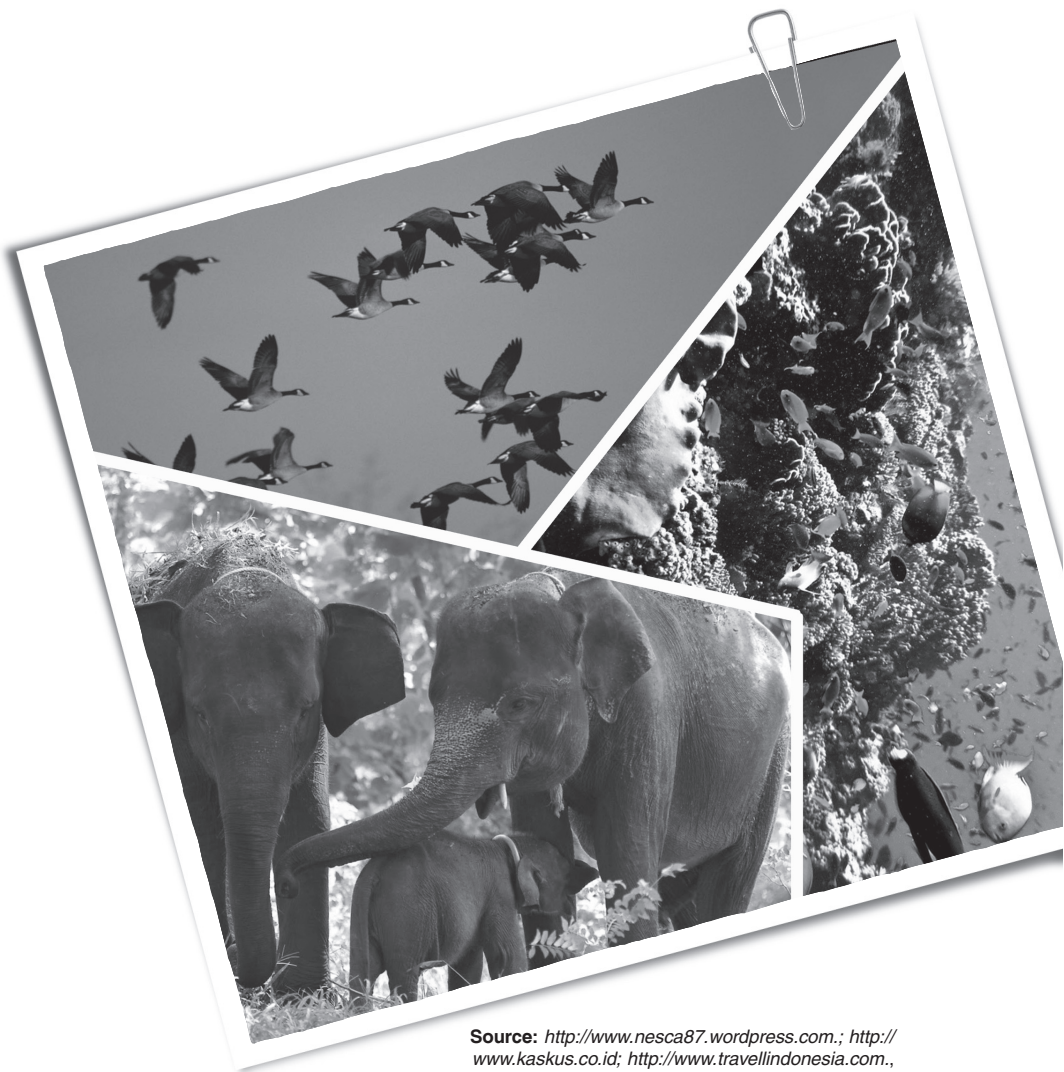
### Aims:

In this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. catch one's attention and express opinions,
  - b. express facts in past, present and future.
2. be able to:
  - a. catch one's attention and express opinions,
  - b. express facts in past, present and future.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned in this unit, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be disciplined, polite, cooperative and responsible in communicating with others.



Source: [http://www.nesca87.wordpress.com.](http://www.nesca87.wordpress.com;); <http://www.kaskus.co.id>; [http://www.travellindonesia.com.](http://www.travellindonesia.com), downloaded July 3, 2015

Look at the pictures carefully. What do you see? Make opinions about the pictures briefly. In this unit you will learn about expressions to catch one's attention and express opinions. Besides, you will also learn how to express facts in present, past and future forms. Be active and attempt all the tasks accordingly, to improve your speaking and writing skills.



## TASK 1

Discuss the following questions with your friends.  
Share your answers with the class.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik diminta memahami pertanyaan-pertanyaan berikut.
2. Peserta didik mendiskusikan jawaban-jawabannya dengan teman. Apabila kesulitan, peserta didik dapat melihat kamus atau referensi yang mereka miliki.
3. Peserta didik menyampaikan jawabannya dan peserta didik yang lain menyimak. Bapak/Ibu Guru mempersilakan peserta didik yang lain untuk menanggapi jawaban temannya atau menyampaikan jawabannya apabila berbeda dengan jawaban temannya.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik mendiskusikan jawaban-jawaban yang sesuai.

### Jawaban:

1. It refers to the animals of a given region or period considered as a whole (*dictionary.reference.com*), or all the animals that live in a particular area, time period or environment (*Merriam-Webster dictionary*).

### Contoh jawaban:

2. Javan rhinos, Sumatran elephants, orang utans, many kinds of birds (peacocks, birds of paradise, eagles, etc.), Javan tigers, etc.
3. There are many factors that threaten their lives, like forest fires, forest clearing by human activities, natural disasters, hunting, etc.
4. Illegal fishing, the use of explosive materials to catch fish, oil spills from tankers, massive hunting of certain species, such as shark hunting.
5. The government issued a law restricting animal hunting, especially the protected and endangered animals. There will be punishments for anyone who breaks this law.



## TASK 2

Work in pairs and look at the pictures carefully.  
What are they?  
Tell your friends the interesting features of each animal.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik bekerja berpasangan dan setiap pasangan mengamati gambar-gambar binatang berikut.
2. Tiap pasangan berdiskusi untuk mendeskripsikan hal yang menarik terkait binatang tersebut secara singkat.
3. Setelah waktu untuk kegiatan ini habis, Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk tunjuk jari membacakan jawabannya. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan setelah itu, melengkapi atau membetulkan jawaban yang disampaikan temannya.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru sebaiknya memberi kesempatan kepada peserta didik yang kurang aktif untuk menyampaikan jawabannya.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai kepada peserta didik yang aktif menjawab.

### Jawaban:

1. It is a bird of paradise. In Indonesia, it is called *cendrawasih* and it's rare. The bird is admired for its exotic plumage. It is best known for its extravagantly colorful coat, elongated tail feathers and decorative plumage.
2. It's jellyfish. Despite the name, jellyfish is not actually fish. Its body is mainly made up of water, around 90%! It also has tentacles around its mouth that vary in length depending on the species of jellyfish.
3. It's the Javan rhinoceros. It has only one horn which is smaller than those of other rhinoceros and it is herbivorous.
4. It's a tarsier. It is a small species of primate and is nocturnal. Its most distinctive feature is that its head is able to turn 180 degrees in both directions.
5. The fish is called manta ray. It can grow to nearly 25 feet from wingtip to wingtip and live for a quarter century. It is also called 'devilfish'.
6. It is a maleo bird, from Sulawesi. It has a unique way to care for its young. Instead of incubating its eggs, this bird lays its eggs in the baking sand of a beach. Furthermore, when the egg hatches, the chick can already fly!
7. It is clown frogfish. The fish is able to camouflage, changing colors, to stay hidden in their reef homes. It has skin anomalies that allow it to impersonate the colors of surrounding rocks or plants.
8. It is a bekantan. It is an endemic animal from Kalimantan. The unique feature of this animal is its long nose. Besides, it has reddish brown hair with a large and distended stomach.



## TASK 4

Let's pronounce the words correctly.  
Then, find their meanings.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik melafalkan kata-kata berikut dengan lantang, satu per satu.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru membetulkan pelafalan peserta didik yang masih kurang tepat.
3. Peserta didik melafalkan kembali kata-kata tersebut dengan lafal yang benar dan akurat.
4. Sebagai kegiatan pengembangan, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menjelaskan kembali arti kata-kata tersebut dan membuat kalimat menggunakan kata-kata tersebut.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik yang kurang aktif dalam kegiatan ini untuk aktif menyampaikan jawaban atau pendapatnya.

### Jawaban:

- |                          |                |
|--------------------------|----------------|
| 1. menyerahkan           | 2. referensi   |
| 3. raksasa, sangat besar | 4. cumi-cumi   |
| 5. unik, khas            | 6. perhatian   |
| 7. mencetak              | 8. berpendapat |
| 9. menarik               | 10. bawah laut |



## TASK 5

Fill in the blanks with the suitable words from TASK 4.

### Jawaban:

- |               |              |               |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. references | 2. unique    | 3. underwater |
| 4. print      | 5. attention |               |



### Variasi

Make sentences using the words from TASK 4.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. The students must **submit** their Indonesian assignments tomorrow, before the first break.
2. My friends and I decide on looking for **references** in a public library.
3. Look at that **giant** tree! It must have been growing for fifty years.
4. A **squid** protects itself by squirting blue ink at its predators.
5. All participants of the *batik* carnival are wearing very **unique** and stunning costumes.
6. I need your **attention**, please. There is important information for you all.
7. Would you **print** the brochure from the Internet for me, please?
8. I **reckon** your idea to go camping during the long holiday is very good.
9. It will be **interesting** if we have a chance to go diving or snorkeling at Bunaken Marine Park.
10. In my opinion, the **underwater** scenery of Raja Ampat's waters is the most beautiful in the world.



### TASK 6

Answer the following questions based on the dialog in TASK 3.

**Jawaban:**

1. Their biology assignment.
2. They are classmates.
3. A poster about underwater life.
4. Friday.
5. To get ideas for a poster they are going to make.
6. It can be 10 meters long, meaning that it is as big as a school bus.
7. They will print the picture and write the facts about a giant squid.
8. They are as wide as the size of a dinner plate.
9. She expresses agreement towards Bagus' opinion.
10. It refers to a giant squid.



### TASK 7

Listen and complete the dialog based on what you have heard.

**Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru dan jawaban:**

- Doni : You look serious. What are you reading?  
 Farah : Look at the picture. Do you know what it is?  
 Doni : It's a **(1) jellyfish**, isn't it?  
 Farah : You're right. What do you think about this jellyfish?  
 Doni : It's **(2) big and beautiful**.  
 Farah : Guess what! The jellyfish is from our country!  
 Doni : Really? Where does it live?  
 Farah : It lives in the huge **(3) land-locked lake** of Kakaban Island, on the Derawan **(4) Archipelago**, Berau, East Kalimantan. The jellyfish is **(5) stingless**!  
 Doni : Are you sure? I think all jellyfish have stings. If you are **(6) stung** by jellyfish while diving, you will discover **(7) red wounds** on your body.

Farah : That is right, except for the jellyfish of Kakaban Island. You know, the lake where the jellyfish live was formed by the movement of **(8) tectonic plates** that have **(9) uplifted** part of the sea, known as Kakaban Island. I think, since the jellyfish stuck in the lake without **(10) predators**, they lose their defense mechanism, the sting.

Doni : That makes sense. Well, I'd love to read the article too.

Farah : O.K., I'll give it to you when I'm done.

Doni : Thanks.



### TASK 8

Complete the following statements based on the dialog in TASK 7.

**Jawaban:**

1. reading an article
2. big and beautiful
3. the huge land-locked lake of Kakaban Island
4. the Derawan Archipelago, Berau, East Kalimantan
5. they are stingless
6. red wounds on their bodies
7. they are diving in the sea
8. the movement of tectonic plates
9. they have been living in an isolated lake without predators
10. hand over the article to Doni



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Listen and complete the dialog based on what you have heard.

**Percakapan yang dibacakan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

- Andin : What brochure is it?  
 Riko : It's an **(1) appeal** to participate in Save Sumatran Tiger **(2) Movement**.  
 Andin : I see.  
 Riko : So, what do you think if we participate?  
 Andin : Sumatran tigers are **(3) endangered** animals; numbers are decreasing because of human activities and **(4) natural phenomena**. So, I think, we should participate.  
 Riko : We have similar **(5) thoughts**.  
 Andin : So, how can we participate in the movement? What does the brochure say?  
 Riko : The brochure says that we can participate by donating money to the **(6) non-profitable** organization.  
 Andin : Do you think the organization is **(7) trustworthy**?  
 Riko : I don't know. Let's check the Internet to make sure they really **(8) issued** the brochure.  
 Andin : Good idea! I'll get my laptop computer and modem.  
 Riko : O.K.

**Soal yang dikerjakan oleh peserta didik:**

- Andin : What brochure is it?  
 Riko : It's an **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_ to participate in Save Sumatran Tiger **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Andin : I see.  
 Riko : So, what do you think if we participate?  
 Andin : Sumatran tigers are **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_ animals; numbers are decreasing because of human activities and **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_. So, I think, we should participate.

Riko : We have similar (5) \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Andin : So, how can we participate in the movement?  
 What does the brochure say?  
 Riko : The brochure says that we can participate by  
 donating money to the (6) \_\_\_\_\_  
 organization.  
 Andin : Do you think the organization is  
 (7) \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Riko : I don't know. Let's check the Internet to make sure  
 they really (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the brochure.  
 Andin : Good idea! I'll get my laptop computer and  
 modem.  
 Riko : O.K.

### TASK 2

Answer the following questions based on the dialog in TASK 1.

1. What is the purpose of the brochure?
2. According to Andien, why should they participate in the movement?
3. What places the animals under threat?
4. Riko says, "We have similar thoughts." What does it mean?
5. What can they do to participate in the movement?
6. Who issued the brochure?
7. What will the speakers do after the conversation?
8. Riko says, "Let's check the Internet to make sure they really ...." What does 'they' refer to?

### Jawaban:

#### TASK 1

- |                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. appeal      | 2. Movement          |
| 3. endangered  | 4. natural phenomena |
| 5. thoughts    | 6. non-profitable    |
| 7. trustworthy | 8. issued            |

#### TASK 2

1. To invite people's participation in Save Sumatran Tiger Movement.
2. Because Sumatran tigers are endangered animals.
3. Human activities and natural phenomena.
4. It means that they agree with Andien's opinion.
5. They can donate money to the non-profitable organization.
6. The non-profitable organization.
7. They will browse the internet, to check on the non-profitable organization that arranged the movement.
8. The word refers to the non-profitable organization that arranged the movement.



### TASK 9

Arrange the following sentences to form a sequential dialog.  
 Then, practice the dialog in pairs.

### Jawaban:

The correct arrangement of the sentences is 4-16-7-14-2-9-1-11-8-15-3-10-5-12-6-13.



### TASK 10

Work in pairs.

Ask and answer questions based on the sequential dialog in TASK 9, in turns.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik membentuk pasangan dengan seorang temannya.

2. Setiap pasangan membaca dan memahami kembali percakapan pada TASK 9.
3. Setelah itu, setiap pasangan melakukan percakapan berupa tanya jawab tentang isi percakapan pada TASK 9. Satu peserta didik mengajukan dua pertanyaan dan dijawab oleh pasangannya, lalu gantian, pasangannya bertanya dua hal dan peserta didik tersebut menjawab dua pertanyaan pasangannya. Lakukan secara bergantian setiap dua pertanyaan.
4. Selama kegiatan berlangsung, Bapak/Ibu Guru mengamati kegiatan bercakap-cakap peserta didik. Bapak/Ibu Guru membantu peserta didik yang menemui kesulitan serta memotivasi peserta didik yang kurang aktif dalam kegiatan tanya jawab ini.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai atas penampilan peserta didik.

### Contoh jawaban:

You : What is the dialog about?  
 Your friend : It's about a poster of a band competition.  
 You : Who are talking in the dialog?  
 Your friend : I think they are friends or classmates.  
 You : Correct. Your turn now.  
 Your friend : Who brings the poster?  
 You : Gigih.  
 Your friend : Why does he show the poster to Dava?  
 You : Because he wants Dava and his band attend the competition.  
 Your friend : I agree. Your questions, please.  
 You : O.K. How does Dava respond to Gigih's idea to join the competition?  
 Your friend : He feels doubtful.  
 You : Why does he feel like that?  
 Your friend : Because the competition will be held next month so he doesn't think that he and his band have time to prepare.  
 You : Correct answer. Now your turn.  
 Your friend : Thanks. Why does Gigih think that a month is more than enough for Dava and his band to prepare?  
 You : Because he and his band practice once a week and they have performed several times.  
 Your friend : What does Gigih suggest to Dava?  
 You : He suggests he and his band decide on the songs they will perform and practice to play the songs more frequently than before, for example three times a week.  
 Your friend : Correct. Next questions are yours.  
 You : O.K. What will Dava do soon?  
 Your friend : He will speak to his band, to decide on whether they will join the competition or not.  
 You : What will Gigih do for them?  
 Your friend : He will support them.  
 You : Well done! Your answers are correct.



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Arrange the sentences to form a sequential dialog.  
 Then, practice the dialog with a friend.

1. Arga : In my opinion, yes, it was. The program was about melting polar ice and how it affects us. Oh, it's really horrible if the polar ice keeps melting in large amounts. It will certainly increase the sea levels and gradually the land where we live will sink.

2. Arga : You're right.  
 3. Arga : I guess so. You know what, I think we are responsible for this phenomenon.  
 4. Arga : Did you watch *Discovery Channel* last night?  
 5. Arga : The polar ice is melting due to global warming which is directly or indirectly triggered by our daily activities. For example, the use of Chlorofluorocarbons for our household appliances and the residues of fuel from our vehicles.  
 6. Arga : At 9 p.m.  
 7. Raka : What do you mean?  
 8. Raka : Sorry, I already slept. Why? Was it interesting?  
 9. Raka : I see. So, we need to be friendlier to nature.  
 10. Raka : Oh, how terrible it is. I'd say, it is hundred times worse than tsunamis.  
 11. Raka : What time was it?

### TASK 2

Answer the following questions based on the sequential dialog in TASK 1.

1. What are the speakers talking about?
2. What were Arga and Raka doing at 9:10 p.m.?
3. According to Arga, what would happen if the horrible phenomenon doesn't stop?
4. What causes polar ice to melt?
5. Who are responsible for the melting polar ice?

Jawaban:

### TASK 1

The correct arrangement of the sentences is 4–11–6–8–1–10–3–7–5–9–2.

### TASK 2

1. The program on *Discovery Channel* about the melting polar ice.
2. Arga was watching *Discovery Channel*, while Raka was sleeping.
3. The land where we live will sink due to the sea level rise.
4. Global warming which directly or indirectly is triggered by our daily activities.
5. All people.



### TASK 11

Complete the following dialogs using suitable expressions of catching one's attention and expressing opinions. Then, practice the dialogs in pairs.

Contoh jawaban:

1. Desy : **Look over there!** Isn't he Aldo?  
 Ratna : Yes, he is. I think Mr. Firman is punishing him.  
 Desy : **I think so.** He must have been late for school again.  
 Ratna : I guess so. I wonder why he often comes late. His house is not far from the school.  
 Desy : **I think he is lazy to attend school.**
2. Jojo : **Attention, everyone.** I have good news for all of us.  
 Farah : What is it, Jojo?  
 Jojo : For our English class next month, we will have a class outing.  
 Dian : What do you mean?  
 Jojo : The teacher will take us to a tourist resort and we are encouraged to speak to foreigners. What do you think about the idea?

Farah : **I think it's very good. We can actually practice our English skills, which will encourage us to be brave and confident to speak English.**

Dian : **I agree with you.**

Jojo : Me too.

3. Genta : **Listen to me, please.** I've just read an announcement about a writing contest held by the Embassy of the Republic of South Korea.

Keke : Then, what?

Genta : You only need to write the most interesting things about South Korea, including its people and culture. Let's participate!

Keke : **I don't think I have time to write an article. Furthermore, I don't even know anything about Korea.**

Genta : Well, we can look for references or browse the Internet. Wouldn't you like a trip to South Korea for free?

Keke : What do you mean?

Genta : **Listen, the prize for the winner is a free trip to South Korea for a week!**

Keke : I'd love it. **O.K., I agree to participate.**

Genta : Good!



### TASK 12

Create dialogs based on the following situations. Then, practice the dialogs in pairs.

Contoh jawaban:

1. You : Look! I have an interesting brochure.  
 Your friend : What brochure?  
 You : A brochure about the recruitment of volunteers for a wildlife organization.  
 Your friend : Then, why do you show it to me?  
 You : I'd like to ask you to join the recruitment.  
 Your friend : A volunteer for a wildlife organization? Sorry, I don't think I can do it.  
 You : Yes, you can. It won't be difficult to be a volunteer. You will only be responsible for promoting the requirements to save wildlife. Don't you care about our wildlife?  
 Your friend : I do care, but ...  
 You : Come on, let's try the recruitment test.  
 Your friend : I don't know, I need more time to think it over.  
 You : O.K.
2. You : Listen! The government gives penalties for fishermen who have been involved in illegal fishing, using explosive again.  
 Your sister : You're right.  
 You : What's your opinion about it?  
 Your sister : I agree with the penalties. Illegal fishing has many bad effects on our country, on the economic side and for the existence of our marine life and all the sea creatures.  
 You : You're right. If our marine resources are exploited by irresponsible people, then what will happen to our next generations? So, we must support our government policy to stop illegal fishing and marine exploitation.  
 Your sister : Yup!
3. You : Look around this city park. What do you think of it now?  
 Your friend : It's dirty and totally unpleasant to jog in or just hang out with friends or families.

- You : I agree. Plastic wraps are everywhere and many plants are withered.
- Your friend : It's definitely different from three years ago when the park was still clean and green. There were many flowering plants and shady trees. There were garbage bins in many places in the park, so people weren't reluctant to throw garbage into them.
- You : I wish the government will reconstruct the park to be more comfortable.
- Your friend : I hope so.



### TASK 14

Read the words and explain their meanings.

**Jawaban:**

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. semenanjung          | 2. tetap              |
| 3. terlarang, terbatas  | 4. ujung paling barat |
| 5. terisolasi, terasing | 6. punah              |
| 7. ketat, keras         | 8. lintas lokasi      |
| 9. pada akhirnya        | 10. ditentukan        |



### Variasi

Find the synonyms of the following words in the text in TASK 13.  
Explain their meanings.

Word	Synonym	Meaning
1. appropriate	_____	_____
2. considerable	_____	_____
3. general	_____	_____
4. prohibited	_____	_____
5. remote	_____	_____
6. rise	_____	_____
7. set on	_____	_____
8. shielding	_____	_____
9. static	_____	_____
10. stern	_____	_____

**Jawaban:**

Word	Synonym	Meaning
1. appropriate	suitable	sesuai (dengan), cocok
2. considerable	dramatic	dramatis
3. general	common	umum
4. prohibited	restricted	terlarang
5. remote	isolated	terpencil
6. rise	increase	peningkatan
7. set on	determined	ditentukan
8. shielding	protection	perlindungan
9. static	stagnant	mandek
10. stern	strict	keras, tegas



### TASK 15

Complete the following statements based on the information in TASK 13.

**Jawaban:**

1. Ujung Kulon peninsula, West Java, Indonesia
2. fewer than 30
3. has been stagnant or even slowly declining
4. Indonesia, Laos, Vietnam, Myanmar, Thailand, Malaysia
5. the westernmost tip of Java Island
6. Vietnam
7. continued strict protection, active translocation and establishment of new populations in suitable and secure habitats
8. 2,000 and 2,500; the next 150 years



### TASK 16

Write facts about a certain topic related to the existence of our fauna.

Write the facts in past, present and future time.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. **General facts**
  - a. Giraffes' concentrations exist only in East Africa particularly at Tanzania Serengeti National Park
  - b. There are numerous other types of subspecies that have been further analyzed, but the problem is these names and boundaries aren't accepted by the scientific community.
  - c. Hunting and habitat loss have driven giraffes to extinction in a number of countries, including Mauritania, Senegal, and possibly Mozambique and Mali.
2. **Facts about the past**
  - a. At one time, herds of over 100 animals were common in the savanna regions of Africa.
  - b. Until the middle of the 20th century giraffes were also commonly found in West Africa, south of the Sahara. However, their populations have fallen sharply and become increasingly fragmented.
3. **Facts about the future**
  - a. The future of giraffes and Africa's other famed plains animals lies in careful conservation of extensive habitats, both in national parks and on private lands.
  - b. The future seems stable for all species of giraffes. They may be low in a few areas, but overall they seem to be doing quite well.



### TASK 17

Develop the facts you have written in TASK 16 into a meaningful paragraph or text.

Share your work with the class.

**Contoh jawaban:**

At one time, herds of over 100 animals were common in the savanna regions of Africa. Until the middle of the 20th century giraffes were also commonly found in West Africa, south of the Sahara, but their populations have fallen sharply and become increasingly fragmented. Today herds of giraffes exist only in East Africa particularly in Tanzania Serengeti National Park.

There are numerous other types of subspecies that have been further analyzed, but the problem is these names and boundaries aren't accepted by the scientific community. Many experts continue to pursue efforts though to make that happen. It is believed that in the future we will see an emergence of more scientific names and subspecies identification of giraffes.

Giraffes are hunted for their tails which are highly prized by many African cultures, such as for good-luck bracelets, fly whisks and thread for sewing and stringing beads. Until now, people still hunt giraffes, more often for their meat and hide. However, habitat destruction is the greatest threat to the animals. Both hunting and habitat loss have driven giraffes to extinction in a number of countries, including Mauritania, Senegal and possibly Mozambique and Mali.

Many conservation efforts to save giraffes have been carried out. In future, we may see giraffes live in careful conservation of extensive habitats, both in national parks and on private lands.

The future seems like one that is stable for all of the different species of giraffes. In a few areas they are low in numbers, but overall they seem to be doing quite well. However, we must realize that human populations and activities may affect giraffes in the future. So we must stop any activities which harm these animals.

Adapted from: - <https://www.awf.org/wildlife-conservation/giraffe> (July 24, 2015)  
- <http://www.giraffeworlds.com/giraffe-species/> (July 24, 2015)



## TASK 18

Look at the pictures.

Write your comments about each picture below.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. People hunt elephants for their tusks. I think, what the people do is very cruel and they deserve heavy punishments. Elephants are living creatures so taking their lives is absolutely wrong and inhumane. Besides, elephants are endangered animals; they are protected by law. Due to the hunting practice, the elephant population declines every year.
2. In my opinion, involving animals, such as tigers, in circus performances is indeed unacceptable and regarded as animal abuse. During a show, animals are forced to perform tricks that have nothing to do with how they behave in the wild. For example, tigers jump through a flaming hoop. While jumping, they may suffer burns. For your information, tigers naturally fear fire so, I guess, they are actually running in fear of their handlers who bang on the cages and cage tunnels with iron bars and scream at them. Besides, the animals are often beaten, starved and confined for long periods of time in order to get them to cooperate with what the trainers want, to perform successfully. Furthermore, the animals spend most of their time in small cages, compared to their habitats in the wild and because of this, I think, it may cause the animals stressed. In conclusion, I'd say, a circus exhibiting animal attractions should be banned.

3. *Topeng monyet* or a masked monkey show is common in a few places in Indonesia. Monkeys dress up in doll costumes, wear masks, dance or ride bicycles in the crowd, while their owners walk after them to collect money. The idea is to entertain or amuse people, but in my opinion, it is cruel to force monkeys to exhibit such attractions. As you may see, the monkeys are extremely skinny which seems the owners don't treat them well. To make matters worse, the owners put chains on their necks! The trainers or owners may hang the monkeys upside down or tie their hands to their backs to make them stand straight. Can you imagine if this was done to you? It's definitely inhumane! So, I'd like to say that we must stop this cruel practice. We should urge governments to ban *topeng monyet* shows.



## TASK 19

In several countries, sharks are hunted for their fins.

People believe that shark fins work well for human's longevity.

Write your opinions whether you agree or disagree with the fact about shark hunting.

Share your work with the class.

### Contoh jawaban:

Hunting sharks for their fins is still carried out, although it is definitely illegal in many parts of the world. Shockingly, tens of millions of sharks are slaughtered every year to satisfy the demand for shark fin soup which keeps increasing due to the increased prosperity of China and other countries in the Far East. At least 8,000 tones of shark fins are shipped to restaurants around the world, which may cost \$100 a bowl.

Fishermen are only interested in the fins because shark meat is of low economical value and takes up too much space in the hold. They slice off sharks' fins while the sharks are still alive and throw the rest of the sharks' bodies back into the ocean where it can take days to die. In my opinion, it is obviously a cruel practice and threatens sharks' lives. If it keeps continuing, I believe that sharks may continue to decline and several species may become extinct. It may happen because most sharks grow slowly, mature late and give birth to a few large pups after a long gestation period while fishermen keep hunting them.

To stop the practice of shark hunting, I think the government should issue strong regulations and effective enforcements to ban this practice. Moreover, restaurants must not be allowed to serve shark fin soup. A heavy sentence should be awarded to those who are involved in this practice. We can also take part by campaigning the ban of shark hunting and promoting the unsustainable nature of the fin trade: tackling both supply and demand.

Adapted from: - <http://www.stopsharkfinning.net/what-is-shark-finning/> (July 24, 2015)  
- [http://www.sharktrust.org/en/stop\\_shark\\_finning](http://www.sharktrust.org/en/stop_shark_finning) (July 24, 2015)



## TASK 21

Read the song lyrics.

What is the message?

### Contoh jawaban:

The message of the song is that we should enjoy our lives because life is beautiful.





## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. D   2. B   3. C   4. A   5. B  
6. E   7. A   8. C   9. B   10. A

B. Create a dialog using the expressions you have learned in this unit.

**Contoh jawaban:**

- You : Oh, no! Look at the boy! He fell off his bicycle.  
Your friend : I think we should go there and help him.  
You : You're right. Let's go!  
Your friend : Oh, I hope he's not seriously injured.  
You : I hope so.

# UNIT IV

## What a Surprise!

### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. express surprises,
  - b. express necessities and expectations,
  - c. use: must/have to, be supposed to/be expected to.
2. be able to:
  - a. express surprises,
  - b. express necessities and expectations,
  - c. use: must/have to, be supposed to/be expected to.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the chance to study English,
2. be brave, cooperative and active in communicating in English, especially when expressing surprises, necessities and expectations.



Look at the girl in the picture. What does she feel? What makes her surprised? Anyway, you must have ever experienced a surprising event. On what occasions did you feel surprised? What did you say when you were surprised? Now, in this unit you will learn about expressions of surprises and necessities or expectations as well.



### TASK 1

Answer the following questions.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. When my family had a surprise party for my seventeenth birthday.
2. When I had to study hard for the tests.
3. When my school held a basketball match and I was expected to join our school basketball team.



### TASK 2

Listen and repeat.

Then, answer the questions that follow.

**Petunjuk Guru**

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru membaca nyaring percakapan-percakapan berikut dan peserta didik menyimak.
2. Selanjutnya Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik secara berpasangan membacakan percakapan-percakapan tersebut. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengoreksi pelafalan peserta didik yang kurang tepat.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mengamati kalimat-kalimat yang dicetak tebal dan menjelaskannya.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik tunjuk jari dan menjawab pertanyaan-pertanyaan di bawah percakapan.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas jawaban bersama-sama.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. Dialog 1 is about the presence of the speakers' favorite singer, while Dialog 2 is about the return of a lost cat.
2. They are used to express surprises.



### Variasi

Answer the questions based on the dialogs in TASK 2.

**Dialog 1**

1. Who is going to have a concert?
2. When will the concert be?
3. Who will get discounts on the concert tickets?
4. What should they do if they want to get a discount?
5. Ida says, "Let's do it."  
What does "it" refer to?

**Dialog 2**

1. What is the dialog about?
2. What did Maya hear?
3. Why does Maya disbelieve that her cat had come back home?
4. Where did Fariz see the cat?
5. How is the cat?

**Jawaban:**

**Dialog 1**

1. Maher Zain, Roni and Ida's favorite singer.
2. Next month.
3. Students.
4. They have to show their student ID cards.
5. It refers to 'showing the student ID cards'.

**Dialog 2**

1. It's about the cat coming back home.
2. A cat meow.
3. She has lost her cat for several weeks.
4. Under the table on the terrace.
5. It is healthy, but looks dirty.



### TASK 3

Read the dialog and pay attention to the sentence in bold.

**Petunjuk Guru**

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca nyaring percakapan berikut secara berpasangan. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengoreksi pelafalan peserta didik yang kurang tepat.
2. Selanjutnya Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mengamati kalimat yang dicetak tebal dan menjelaskannya.
3. Kemudian peserta didik diminta memahami penjelasan dalam *Supporting Feature* tentang ungkapan terkejut.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mencari ungkapan-ungkapan lain yang digunakan untuk mengungkapkan rasa terkejut.
5. Sebagai pengembangan, Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat memberikan beberapa berita yang mengejutkan, peserta didik diminta meresponsnya dengan ungkapan yang sesuai.



### TASK 4

Answer the following questions based on the dialog in TASK 3.

**Jawaban:**

1. At home.
2. A birthday gift.
3. The gift is sent by Viona, her old friend from elementary school.
4. She is going to phone Viona and say thanks.
5. It refers to the gift.



### Variasi

**TASK 1**

Arrange the sentences to form a sequential dialog.

1. Jay : Really? How could he fail? He is smart, isn't he?
2. Jay : We had better call him first to ensure that he is at home.
3. Jay : Poor him! He must be very disappointed. What will he do then?
4. Jay : Dewa wrote on facebook that it's the worst day in his life. Do you know what happened?
5. Jay : What about meeting him and trying to amuse him? He needs friends right now.
6. Randy : O.K. I'll call him now.
7. Randy : He has not been accepted by his favorite university.

8. Randy : Sure. Let's go to his house.
9. Randy : I don't know. I haven't met him.
10. Randy : Yeah, but he has lost concentration after his mother passed away.

### TASK 2

Answer the questions based on the dialog in TASK 1.

1. What did Dewa write on facebook?
2. Why did he write that?
3. Why is Jay surprised about what happened to Dewa?
4. What will Jay and Randy do?
5. Why should they call Dewa first?

**Jawaban:**

### TASK 1

The correct arrangement of the sentences is 4-7-1-10-3-9-5-8-2-6.

### TASK 2

1. It's the worst day in his life.
2. He has not been accepted by his favorite university.
3. Dewa is smart.
4. They will meet Dewa and try to amuse him.
5. To ensure that Dewa is at home.



## TASK 5

In pairs, complete the following dialogs with suitable expressions. Then, practice the complete dialogs.

**Contoh jawaban:**

- |                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Really            | 2. What a surprise |
| 3. It's unbelievable | 4. Is it true      |
| 5. Don't be kidding  |                    |



## Variasi

### TASK 1

In pairs, complete the following dialogs with suitable expressions.

1. Brenda : Guess what! Mr. Faizal will move from our school.  
 Ryan : \_\_\_\_\_? Who said so?  
 Brenda : Dona.  
 Ryan : O, Gosh. We will lose one of our best teachers.  
 Brenda : Yeah. I hope we will have a good replacement teacher like him.
2. Mr. Roy : Mr. Danu will have a pilgrimage this year.  
 Galih : Do you mean Mr. Danu, the pedicab driver? \_\_\_\_\_! We would never have guessed that such a simple man can do that.  
 Mr. Roy : Yeah. Mr. Danu is very sincere and has a strong will.  
 Galih : No wonder he can reach his dream.
3. Gea : Several people are rushing to the bank of the river. What happened?  
 Bonar : A fisherman found a doll like a *jenglot* there.  
 Gea : \_\_\_\_\_? I've never seen such a creature before.  
 Bonar : Neither have I.

4. Mrs. Tya : I'll tell you what! Mrs. Shanty is pregnant.  
 Mrs. Rona : \_\_\_\_\_! She has been married for ten years without a child. Now, she is pregnant. She and her husband must be very happy and grateful.

Mrs. Tya : Of course. They are longing for a child very much. Let's congratulate them.

Mrs. Rona : O.K.

5. Sonia : Vika, happy birthday. We made this cake for you.

Vika : \_\_\_\_\_! You know, I am very happy. Thanks, Sonia.

Sonia : You're welcome. Now, make a wish and cut the cake.

Vika : Sure.

### TASK 2

Answer the following questions based on the dialogs in TASK 1.

1. For Dialog 1. Who do you think the speakers are?
2. What news does Brenda tell Ryan about?
3. What does Brenda hope?
4. For Dialog 2. What will Mr. Danu do?
5. Why is Galih surprised at hearing the news?
6. According to Mr. Roy, what is Mr. Danu like?
7. For Dialog 3. Where are several people rushing to?
8. Why do they rush there?
9. Who have never seen *jenglot*?
10. For Dialog 4. What news does Mrs. Tya tell Mrs. Rona about?
11. Why is Mrs. Rona surprised?
12. What will Mrs. Tya and Mrs. Rona do?
13. For Dialog 5. Who gives a cake to Vika?
14. Why does she do that?
15. What does Vika feel?

**Jawaban:**

### TASK 1 (Contoh jawaban)

- |                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Are you telling me the truth | 2. It's a wonder        |
| 3. Really                       | 4. Wow, it's a surprise |
| 5. What a surprise              |                         |

### TASK 2

1. Classmates or school mates.
2. Mr. Faizal, their teacher, will move from their school.
3. She hopes that they will have a good replacement teacher like Mr. Faizal.
4. He will have a pilgrimage.
5. Mr. Danu is a pedicab driver.
6. He is very sincere and has a strong will.
7. To the bank of a river.
8. A fisherman found a doll like a *jenglot*.
9. Both Gea and Bonar.
10. Mrs. Shanty is pregnant.
11. Mrs. Shanty and her husband have been married for about ten years without a child.
12. They will congratulate Mrs. Shanty and her husband.
13. Sonia.
14. Vika celebrates her birthday.
15. She is surprised and happy.



## TASK 6

Answer the following questions based on the complete dialogs in TASK 5.

**Jawaban:**

### Dialog 1

1. Father and son.
2. Randy is accepted by the mining company he applied for a job at.

3. He has been waiting for more than six months after the job interview, but there has not been any information.
4. He thought he failed.
5. He feels happy.

**Dialog 2**

1. They are talking about Dianne who won the English storytelling competition.
2. They are surprised.
3. Dianne is not very talkative and a little shy.
4. They cannot judge a person by their appearance only.
5. It is 'taciturn'.

**Dialog 3**

1. Mr. Brown.
2. Near Gea and Tonny's house.
3. Mr. Brown's house is surrounded by high fences. There is also a security officer guarding the house.
4. There is a spy camera in the house and it was turned off.
5. It refers to the spy camera in Mr. Brown's house.

**Dialog 4**

1. A newspaper or the Internet.
2. Five babies.
3. She feels surprised.
4. They are underweight and still being treated at the hospital, but they have shown good progress.
5. They hope their babies can survive and grow well.

**Dialog 5**

1. At home.
2. They will holiday in Bali at the end of this year.
3. Their father is always busy and doesn't have time for a holiday.
4. He is going to have a furlough.
5. She is happy.



**TASK 7**

Read the dialogs and pay attention to the words in bold.



**Variasi**

Answer the following questions based on the dialogs in TASK 7.

**Dialog 1**

1. Who do you think the speakers are?
2. Have they submitted their assignments?
3. When do they have to submit their assignments?
4. What is Ronald going to do before submitting his assignment?
5. Ryan says, "I must finish my work as soon as possible." What does he express?

**Dialog 2**

1. Why does Anya call Vina?
2. What is she going to buy from the bookstore?
3. Why is Vina supposed to stay at home?
4. What does Vina have to do at home?
5. What will Anya do finally?

**Jawaban:**

**Dialog 1**

1. They are classmates.
2. No, they haven't.
3. The day after tomorrow.

4. He is going to recheck it.
5. He expresses necessity.

**Dialog 2**

1. She intends to ask her to go to the bookstore.
2. She is going to buy a novel.
3. Her parents are going out.
4. She has to sit for her younger sister.
5. She will go to Vina's house.



**TASK 8**

Complete the following dialogs using the words in brackets, correctly.

**Jawaban:**

**Dialog 1**

1. don't have to
2. is supposed to
3. have to

**Dialog 2**

4. are expected to
5. must



**Variasi**

Complete the table to analyze the sentences expressing necessities and expectations in the dialogs in TASK 8.

Sentence	Function

**Jawaban:**

Sentence	Function
You don't have to pick him up.	It's not necessary for you to pick him up.
He is supposed to be here before dinner.	It is expected that he will be here before dinner.
You have to go to the supermarket.	It's necessary for you to go to the supermarket.
We are expected to arrive there before the funeral ceremony tomorrow afternoon.	It is expected that we arrive there before the funeral ceremony tomorrow afternoon.
We must reserve the tickets now.	It's necessary for us to reserve the tickets now.



## TASK 9

Work in pairs.

Ask and answer the following questions, in turns.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik bekerja secara berpasangan dan memahami pertanyaan-pertanyaan-pertanyaan berikut.
2. Selanjutnya peserta didik bertanya jawab tentang pertanyaan-pertanyaan tersebut secara bergantian. Selama kegiatan berlangsung, Bapak/Ibu Guru berkeliling mengawasi dan mengoreksi pelafalan peserta didik yang kurang tepat.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat meminta beberapa pasangan peserta didik melakukan tanya jawab di depan kelas. Mereka diminta menulis jawaban pasangannya.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru senantiasa memotivasi peserta didik untuk aktif berkomunikasi dalam bahasa Inggris.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. You : What do you have to do every Sunday?  
Your friend : I have to clean the garden. What about you?  
You : I have to help my mother cook.
2. You : What do you have to do today?  
Your friend : I have to do the final rehearsal before the dance competition. And you?  
You : I have to attend an English course.
3. You : What must you do this afternoon?  
Your friend : I must do my homework after school. Will you have a similar activity?  
You : Yes, but I have to accompany my mother to a florist first.
4. You : What did you have to do yesterday morning?  
Your friend : I had to pitch a tent in a campsite, together with my friends. What about you?  
You : I had to prepare ingredients for cooking.
5. You : What must you do tomorrow?  
Your friend : I must finish my proposal and submit it to the principal. And you?  
You : I must submit the result of my interview to the teacher.



## TASK 10

Say your answers in TASK 9 in a different way using "It is necessary ...."

### Contoh jawaban:

1. You : It is necessary for me to clean the garden every Sunday.  
Your friend : It is necessary for me to help my mother cook every Sunday.
2. You : It is necessary for me to do the final rehearsal today before the dance competition.  
Your friend : It is necessary for me to attend an English course today.
3. You : It is necessary for me to do my homework this afternoon after school.  
Your friend : It is necessary for me to do my homework and accompany my mother to a florist this afternoon.
4. You : It was necessary for me to pitch a tent in a campsite, together with my friends, yesterday morning.

Your friend : It was necessary for me to prepare ingredients for cooking yesterday morning.

5. You : It is necessary for me to finish my proposal and submit it to the principal tomorrow.

Your friend : It is necessary for me to submit the result of my interview to the teacher tomorrow.



## TASK 11

Work in pairs.

Ask and answers the following questions, in turns.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. You : What are you supposed to do as the oldest son or daughter?  
Your friend : I am supposed to care for my younger sister and brother when my parents are out. And you?  
You : I am supposed to be a good model for my younger brother.
2. You : What are you supposed to do as a good student?  
Your friend : I am supposed to be smart and creative. What about you?  
You : I am supposed to explore my knowledge.
3. You : What are you supposed to do as a member of a society?  
Your friend : I am supposed to participate in social activities. You?  
You : I am supposed to help the poor.



## TASK 12

Say your answers in TASK 11 in a different way using "I am expected ...."

### Contoh jawaban:

1. You : As the oldest son, I am expected to care for my younger sister and brother when my parents are out.  
Your friend : As the oldest daughter, I am expected to be a good model for my younger brother.
2. You : As a good student, I am expected to be smart and creative.  
Your friend : As a good student, I am expected to explore my knowledge.
3. You : As a member of a society, I am expected to participate in social activities.  
Your friend : As a member of a society, I am expected to help the poor.



## TASK 13

Complete the following sentences using your own words.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. Fathers must **be responsible for their families**.  
Fathers are supposed to **work hard for their families**.
2. Teachers have to **teach their students useful knowledge**.  
Teachers are supposed to **raise students' creativity and curiosity**.
3. Naughty students have to **get rid of their bad deeds**.  
Naughty students are supposed to **feel sorry for the bad deeds they have done**.

- Motorcyclists have to **obey traffic rules**. Motorcyclists are supposed to **ride their motorcycles carefully**.
- Governors must **develop their regencies into better condition**. Governors are supposed to **listen to their people's voice and help the poor**.



## TASK 14

Create dialogs based on the following situations. Then, practice the dialogs with a friend.

### Contoh jawaban:

- Your sister : You know what! The rescue team found a little girl under ruins after an earthquake and she is still alive.

You : Is it true? That's a miracle!

Your sister : Yes. She still survives although in a very weak condition and her legs are broken.

You : Hope she will recover soon. Her parents must be happy knowing that their daughter is still alive.

Your sister : Of course.
- Your teacher : Congratulations! You are appointed as exchange student for Australia.

You : Really? Thank you, Sir. I'm happy to hear that. It's a surprise.

Your teacher : You will go there mid year. From now on, you have to improve your fluency in English speaking and obtain much knowledge about Australian culture.

You : Yes, Sir. I will do my best.



## Variasi

Dengan perintah kegiatan yang sama, Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat memberi tambahan latihan sebagai berikut.

- Your uncle is a sailor. He has sailed for many years and never returned home. Suddenly, he arrives home. Your mother tells you about that and you are surprised. How would the dialog go?
- You and your friend are talking about the celebration for National Education Day. All students have to attend the ceremony tomorrow, wearing school uniform (white shirts and grey skirts/trousers), hats and ties. After the ceremony, the students are expected to participate in several competitions. How would the dialog go?

### Contoh jawaban:

- Your mother : Have you heard about your uncle arriving home?

You : Do you mean Uncle Tony?

Your mother : Yes. He has sailed for many years and now he has returned.

You : What a surprise! Where is he now, Mom?

Your mother : At your grandpa's house.

You : Let's go there, Mom. I want to meet him.

Your mother : O.K.

- You : We will celebrate National Education Day tomorrow. Will you attend the ceremony?

Your friend : Of course. We have to attend the ceremony and wear school uniform, hats and ties.

You : You're right. Anyway, will you participate in several competitions after the ceremony?

Your friend : Yup. We are expected to participate, aren't we?

You : Yeah. I intend to join the poem reading competition. What about you?

Your friend : I want to join the drawing competition.



## TASK 16

Read the song lyrics. What is the message?

### Contoh jawaban:

The message of the song is that we should be happy of having surprises in our lives because the surprises often bring joys.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

### Jawaban:

1. B   2. E   3. D   4. A   5. C  
6. B   7. E   8. D   9. E   10. C

B. Write a dialog using expressions of a surprise or necessity/expectation.

### Contoh jawaban:

- Marsha : Hey, look! We have received a laptop computer as a prize.
- Linda : Have we?
- Marsha : Yes. Read the writing on the inner side of this package.
- Linda : Wow, you are right. It's a surprise! What do we have to do then?
- Marsha : We have to show this package to the store owner where we bought the snack. He/she will send it to the company and exchange it with the prize.
- Linda : O.K. Let's go to the store.

# Mid-Term Test 1

## LISTENING SECTION

### PART I

1. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Boy : You know what? My uncle and I will visit Raja Ampat next holiday.  
Girl : Wow! That sounds great! I believe that it will be a great adventure.  
Boy : Of course. The most wonderful is that my uncle received two vouchers to stay at a resort at the seashore.  
Girl : Really? It will be an amazing experience.  
**Narrator** : Where will the boy stay during his vacation?

Jawaban: B

2. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Boy : What's the matter?  
Girl : My laptop computer is broken and I haven't finished my task. It should be submitted tomorrow. Where can I find a mechanic to repair it?  
Boy : If you want to repair your laptop computer soon, you should go to Excellent Workshop near my house. I'll take you there.  
Girl : Thank you.  
**Narrator** : What does the boy suggest to the girl?

Jawaban: E

3. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Man : What captions do you like?  
Woman : I like motivation captions. When I feel down, I read them to motivate my spirit. How about you?  
Man : I like funny captions which make me laugh, but I am also keen on reading captions about good attitudes which make me behave better.  
**Narrator** : Why does the woman like those captions?

Jawaban: E

4. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Man : Look, the train is arriving! Have you prepared our stuff?  
Woman : Sure. We don't miss anything.  
Man : That's good. Let me carry them and let's go.  
Woman : O.K.  
**Narrator** : Where does the dialog take place?

Jawaban: D

### PART II

5. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

**Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : Don't run! Look, your shoe sole has come off!  
Boy : You are right. Do you have glue to repair it?  
Girl : No, I don't. You have to buy the glue.  
Boy : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator** : What is the most appropriate response?  
A. I think so.  
B. Wow! That's terrific!  
C. It is my new shoes.  
D. You should be happy.

Jawaban: A

6. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

**Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Man : Have you watched the latest news on television?  
Woman : No, I haven't. Is there any interesting news?  
Man : Yes, there is. A helicopter accident occurred in our town, but luckily all the passengers survived.  
Woman : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator** : What is the woman most likely to reply with?  
A. Really? It's unbelievable!  
B. The helicopter is interesting.  
C. It's better to read newspaper.  
D. You should see the news.

Jawaban: A

7. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

**Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : I haven't finished my task. I think I need references to finish it, but the school library is closed this evening.  
Boy : You can visit the public library which is open until evening, but I don't know the place. If you want to know the address, search for it in the Internet. You can use my smart phone.  
Girl : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator** : What will the girl probably say?  
A. I don't need the references.  
B. Why don't you collect the task today?  
C. You should come to the school library this evening.  
D. No, thanks. I can use mine.

Jawaban: D



**PART III**

8. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 Man : What are you doing, Jane?  
 Woman : I am reading a caption about nature. It is beautiful, which makes me feel cozy. The words "Nature makes the world perfect" make the caption more interesting. Do you like reading captions?  
 Man : Yes, I do, but I like captions about friendship, to remind me how important friends are in my life.  
**Narrator :** Which picture matches with the caption which the woman reads?

**Jawaban: C**

9. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 Woman : Have you heard the recent news about our town?  
 Man : No, I haven't. What is it about?  
 Woman : Our town received the *Adipura* Award!  
 Man : Wow! That's terrific! We should be proud.  
**Narrator :** Which picture goes with the conversation?

**Jawaban: D**

10. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 Javan rhino is the most threatened of the five rhino species. In the past, Javan rhinos existed from northeast India and the Sunderbans, throughout mainland Southeast Asia and on the island of Sumatra. Now, they are protected in Ujung Kulon National Park in Java, Indonesia. However, they are still endangered because of reduced genetic diversity, natural disaster, invasive species and disease. In future, there will be a program to translocate rhinos from Ujung Kulon National Park to establish a new population in other suitable habitat in Indonesia. This new habitat would eliminate the threat of natural disasters and create two populations.  
Adopted from: <http://www.worldwildlife.org/species/javan-rhino> (June 21, 2015)  
**Narrator :** Which picture goes with to the monolog?

**Jawaban: D**

11. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 If you like trekking and have a vacation in Lombok, don't forget to visit Mount Rinjani, the second highest volcano in Indonesia. This trek is one of the best in Southeast Asia. It will be magic trekking within two to six days to reach the top and see one of the most beautiful sunrises from the crater rim. If you are ready for this great adventure, don't forget to prepare your physic.  
Adopted from: <http://blog.eoasia.com/2014/08/25/12-reasons-to-visit-lombok/> (June 21, 2015)  
**Narrator :** Which picture is suitable with the monolog?

**Jawaban: B**

**PART IV**

- Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Questions 12 and 13 are based on the following monolog.**  
 Karimunjawa is one of the best places for you who love marine life. If you are attracted to swimming or snorkeling, you should visit Tanjung Gelam, Menjangan Kecil and Cemara Kecil Island. If you prefer sunbathing, don't forget to visit the white sandy beaches in Menjangan Besar and Cemara Kecil. If you want to see marine life on Karimunjawa Islands, you should visit Gosong Cemara and Burung Island by renting a fisherman's boat. Besides, you should try other activities such as water bicycle, water surfing, hiking and camping, especially on Karimunjawa and Kemujan Island.  
Adopted from: <http://www.tourkarimunjawaisland.com/2014/07/karimunjawa-island-beauty-and-amazing.html?m=1>

- Narrator:**  
 12. Where do people swim and snorkel?  
 13. How do people reach Gosong Cemara and Burung Island?

12. **Jawaban: E**  
 13. **Jawaban: D**

- Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Questions 14 and 15 are based on the following monolog.**  
 Coral reefs are one of the most diverse ecosystems in the world. Coral reefs around the world are rapidly degrading. They are facing natural threats in the form of fluctuations in the sea temperature, salinity levels and abundance of predators. Moreover, human activities in the form of coastal development, water pollution, fishing using explosives or cyanide and trading reef species place the coral reefs in danger. The government should build marine parks to protect coral reefs and implement the law of protecting coral reefs effectively.  
Adopted from: <http://www.animalport.com/endangered-animals/endangered-coral-reef-animals.html> (June 23, 2015)

- Narrator:**  
 14. What causes coral reefs in danger?  
 15. How does the government protect coral reefs?

14. **Jawaban: D**  
 15. **Jawaban: B**

**This is the end of the listening section.**

**READING SECTION**

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 16. A | 31. B | 46. E |
| 17. C | 32. B | 47. A |
| 18. E | 33. E | 48. E |
| 19. C | 34. B | 49. B |
| 20. B | 35. C | 50. E |
| 21. A | 36. C |       |
| 22. D | 37. A |       |
| 23. E | 38. A |       |
| 24. A | 39. D |       |
| 25. C | 40. B |       |
| 26. C | 41. C |       |
| 27. C | 42. A |       |
| 28. B | 43. A |       |
| 29. C | 44. B |       |
| 30. D | 45. B |       |

# UNIT V

## Learn to Write Application Letters



### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. identify the social function, structure and linguistic features used in application letters,
  - b. write application letters,
  - c. use passive voice.
2. be able to:
  - a. identify the social function, structure and linguistic features used in application letters,
  - b. write application letters,
  - c. use passive voice.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be honest, disciplined, confident and responsible in communicating with others.



What kind of job do you want to have in the future? What should you do to apply for the job? In this unit you will learn how to write application letters. Please understand and practice it.



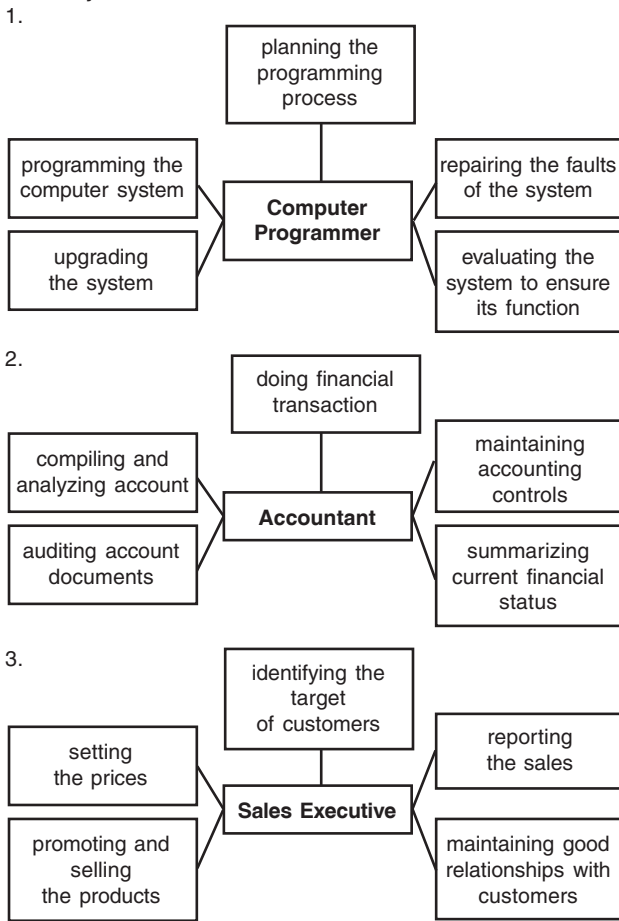
### TASK 1

Work in groups of four.  
Complete the mappings with words related to each profession.

#### Petunjuk Guru

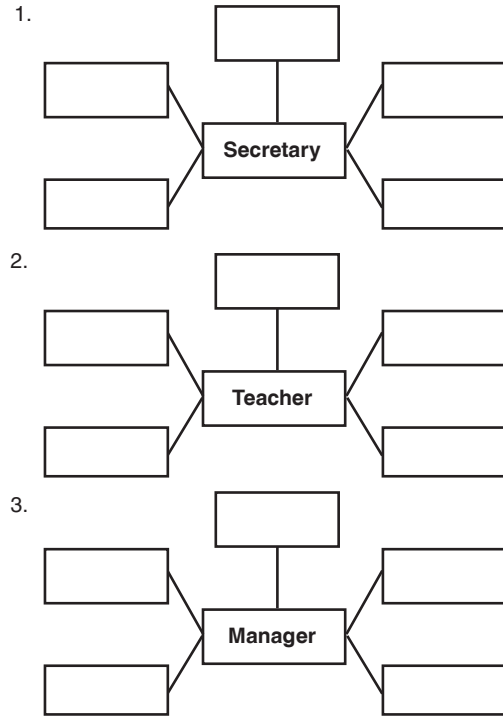
1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membentuk kelompok yang terdiri atas empat peserta didik.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memperhatikan diagram berikut.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru menjelaskan kegiatan yang akan dilakukan peserta didik. Peserta didik melengkapi diagram tersebut dengan menulis tugas-tugas yang harus dilakukan oleh masing-masing profesi.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberikan waktu kurang lebih sepuluh menit untuk melengkapi diagram tersebut.
5. Dengan arahan dan bimbingan Bapak/Ibu Guru, peserta didik berlomba untuk tunjuk jari menyampaikan tugas-tugas yang dilakukan oleh masing-masing profesi.
6. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi kelompok yang kurang aktif.

#### Contoh jawaban:

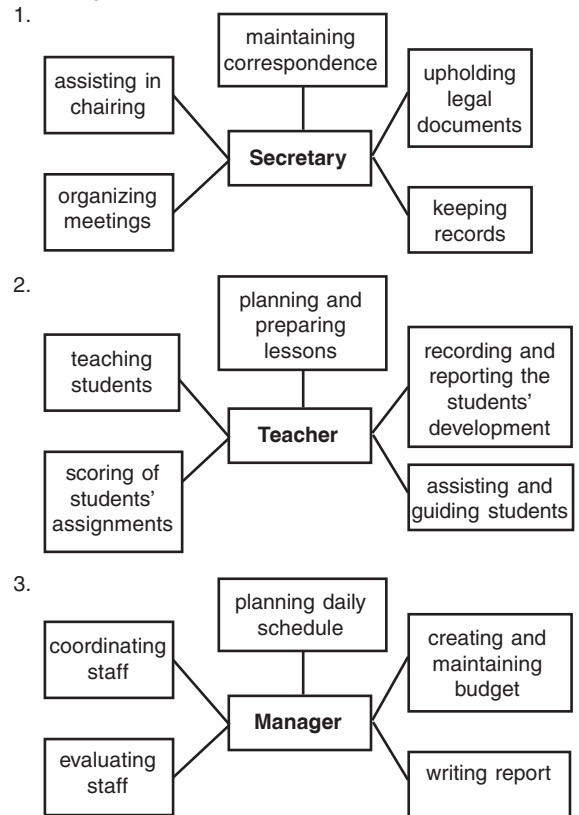


### Variasi

Dengan perintah kegiatan yang sama, Bapak/Ibu guru dapat memberi tambahan latihan berikut.



#### Contoh jawaban:





### TASK 3

Match the words in column A with their correct meanings in column B.

**Jawaban:**

1. f    2. g    3. i    4. a    5. k  
 6. b    7. d    8. c    9. h    10. e



### TASK 5

Listen and answer the questions based on the letter in TASK 4.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca kembali dan memahami isi surat lamaran kerja pada TASK 4.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan pertanyaan-pertanyaan berikut satu per satu dan peserta didik menyimak.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan kembali pertanyaan-pertanyaan tersebut satu per satu dan memotivasi peserta didik untuk aktif tunjuk jari menjawab pertanyaan tersebut.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai.

**Pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

1. Who wrote the application letter?
2. To whom is the letter sent?
3. What is the purpose of writing the letter?
4. How does the applicant know about the job vacancy?
5. What position is being advertised?
6. What is the applicant's educational background?
7. How many years work experience does the applicant have?
8. What is the applicant's job specification in his current job?
9. What is the applicant's personality?
10. How will the employer invite the applicant for an interview?

**Jawaban:**

1. Yudi Feriandy
2. Mr. Danu Galang Putra as Personnel Manager of PT Green, the employer.
3. To find a job.
4. On the company's website.
5. An accountant.
6. Accounting.
7. Three years.
8. He is Financial Analyst who carries out a wide range of commercial processes.
9. He is positive, motivated and hard-working, keen to learn and contributable.
10. Calling him or sending a letter via e-mail.



### TASK 6

Arrange the following sentences to form a sequential application letter.

**Jawaban:**

The correct arrangement of the sentences is 8-6-3-1-7-5-2-4.



### TASK 7

Identify the structure of the letter in TASK 6.

Discuss and compare your identification with your friend's. Share the result of your discussion with the class.

**Jawaban:**

Applicant's address	Anita Rahma Putri Jl. Rajawali no. 56 Bogor
Date	November 2, 2015
Employer's address	Mr. Iwan Perdana Personnel Manager PT Nagotex Jl. Kusuma no. 8 Bandung, West Java
Salutation	Dear Mr. Iwan Perdana:
Opening paragraph	I would like to apply for the Manager Marketing position advertised in Suara Indonesia on Saturday, October 31, 2015. As requested, I am enclosing a completed job application, latest certificate, my academic transcript, resume and references.
Body of letter	I graduated from Management of Garuda University in 2014. My work experience as Marketing Team Leader at PT Elegant Garment was maintaining a good relationship with colleagues and improving my leadership skills, communication skills and ability to work under pressure and a team worker. I am fluent in spoken and written English.
Closing paragraph	It will be appreciated if I can have a chance to have a test or interview. I would like to give you further information you may require. I can be reached on my mobile phone 08699551234556 any time. Thank you for your attention.
Closing	Yours sincerely, Anita Rahma Putri



## Variasi

Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

Sandy Chandra Aditya  
Perumahan Nusa Indah Blok F no. 4  
Batam  
08178788956445

November 15, 2015

Human Resources Department Manager  
PT Global Computa  
Jl. Nusantara no. 17  
Batam

Dear Sir/Madam:

I would like to apply for the post of computer programmer which was advertised on jobseeker.com on November 12, 2015.

I am a fresh graduate from SMK Taruna Bangsa majored in Networking and Computer Engineering. I improved my skills and experienced in computer program and networking through internship at PT Bumi Agung as a computer technician. I believe that my qualifications are an asset for your company.

I am eager to learn, have good motivation for progress and can work with a team or individually. I am able to operate a computer and have a good command in English, both spoken and written.

I enclose my resume, recent photograph, references, copy of certificate and academic transcript. I would be very grateful for an interview. I can be reached on the number given above. Thank you for your consideration.

Yours faithfully,

Sandy Chandra Aditya

- What is the letter about?
  - Sandy's work experience.
  - An application letter.
  - An invitation for an interview test.
  - Detailed information to apply for a job.
  - Information about job vacancy at PT Global Computa.
- What position is offered by the company?
  - Manager.
  - Animator.
  - Computer programmer.
  - Technician staff.
  - Human Resources Department staff.
- What is the third paragraph about?
  - Sandy's educational background
  - Sandy's experience at internship.
  - Sandy's additional skills.
  - The documents enclosed in the letter.
  - Information on how to contact Sandy.
- From the letter, we know that the applicant \_\_\_\_\_.
  - can be reached via e-mail
  - is graduated from university
  - sends an application letters with resume, only

- has work experiences at a national company
- find the information of the job vacancy on a website

- "I am eager to learn ...."

What is the closest meaning of the underlined word?

- Uneasy.
- Keen.
- Apathetic.
- Stodgy.
- Exhausted.

### Jawaban:

- B.** Teks tersebut merupakan surat lamaran kerja. Hal itu disimpulkan dari penerima surat yaitu "Human Resource Department Manager" dan kalimat "I would like to apply for the post of computer programmer ....". Jadi, pilihan jawaban (B) benar.
- C.** Jawaban disimpulkan dari kalimat "I would like to apply for the post of computer programmer ....". Jadi, pelamar melamar pekerjaan sebagai programmer komputer, sesuai dengan pilihan jawaban (C).
- C.** Jawaban disimpulkan dari kalimat "I am eager to learn, have good motivation for .... I am able to operate a computer ....". Hal itu menunjukkan bahwa paragraf tiga tentang keterampilan Sandy. Jadi, pilihan jawaban (C) benar. Pilihan jawaban yang lain salah; (A) dan (B) merupakan gagasan di paragraf dua, sedangkan (D) dan (E) merupakan gagasan di paragraf empat.
- E.** Jawaban disimpulkan dari kalimat "I would like to apply for the post of computer programmer which was advertised on jobseeker.com ....". Jadi, pelamar mendapat informasi lowongan kerja dari website, sesuai dengan pilihan jawaban (E). Pilihan jawaban yang lain salah; (A) tidak sesuai dengan kalimat "I can be reached on the number given above.", (B) tidak sesuai dengan kalimat "I am a fresh graduate from SMK Taruna Bangsa, ....", (C) tidak sesuai dengan kalimat "I enclose my resume, recent photograph, references, copy of certificate and academic transcript.", dan (D) tidak sesuai dengan kalimat "I improved my skills and experienced in computer program and networking through internship ....".
- B.** Kata 'eager' memiliki makna yang sama dengan kata 'keen' yaitu bersemangat. Jadi, pilihan jawaban (B) benar. Pilihan jawaban yang lain salah karena memiliki makna yang berbeda; (A) artinya khawatir, (C) artinya lesu, (D) artinya bosan, dan (E) artinya lelah.



## TASK 9

Change the following active sentences into passive ones.

### Jawaban:

- A scholarship from University of Indonesia was received by Yuda.
- Recruitment for bachelor degree will be opened by an international company.
- The agenda for the meeting is being typed by the secretary.
- 20% discount for students is offered by Smart Language Course.
- The new product can be sold at the market by the marketing team.
- The new employees were being trained by the supervisor.
- Several novels have been published by the publisher.
- The refugees of Mount Sinabung eruption were prohibited to visit their houses by the rescue team.



### Variasi

Change the following active sentences into passive ones.

- The director manages the company well.
- The company has advertised a new product on a television station.
- The students are studying math for the test.
- I will prepare the equipment for camping.
- Anneke can attend the music festival.
- Tyas has attended public speaking classes.
- The technician repaired the electricity meter at my house.
- My mother was fetching me from school when the accident happened.

#### Jawaban:

- The company is managed by the director well.
- A new product has been advertised by the company on a television station.
- Math is being studied by the students for the test.
- The equipment will be prepared by me for camping.
- The music festival can be attended by Anneke.
- Public speaking classes have been attended by Tyas.
- The electricity meter at my house was repaired by the technician.
- I was being fetched by my mother from school when the accident happened.



### TASK 10

Complete the letter with the correct words from the box.

#### Jawaban:

1. d   2. a   3. f   4. g   5. k  
6. b   7. i   8. h   9. c   10. e



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Complete the following statements based on the letter in TASK 10.

- The application letter is sent by \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.
- The applicant applies for \_\_\_\_\_.
- Although the applicant is a fresh graduate, the applicant has experience for real work through \_\_\_\_\_.
- The applicant has the ability to \_\_\_\_\_ and has good \_\_\_\_\_.
- The applicant has a \_\_\_\_\_ personality.
- The applicant can be reached via \_\_\_\_\_.

#### TASK 2

Complete the sentences with the correct words from the box in TASK 10.

- Yuda attends a TOEFL course because one of the \_\_\_\_\_ to receive scholarship abroad is having a TOEFL certificate with a minimum score of 500.
- Sehat Hospital is one of the best hospitals in my town. The doctors and paramedics show their professionalism.

When my friend was hospitalized, I noticed the doctors and nurses of the hospital displayed not only their \_\_\_\_\_ and expertise, but also their love and care.

- Ms. Dina is \_\_\_\_\_ and has good dedication because she teaches the children in a remote area to make them more knowledgeable and make their village better.
- Rita \_\_\_\_\_ hopes that she will have a \_\_\_\_\_ to be a famous singer. A producer has invited her to record her beautiful voice at a famous recording company.
- One of the leading marketing staff of PT Muda resigned because he has to move abroad to continue his studies. Therefore, the \_\_\_\_\_ is advertising the job vacancy for the position on the company's website.
- A national company located in Jakarta is seeking highly motivated and \_\_\_\_\_ candidates to fulfill the \_\_\_\_\_ jobs for several positions.
- Mila studied hard. Therefore, she received a Bachelor of Arts degree as \_\_\_\_\_, from a reputable university, and graduated top of her class. It is not doubtful that she received a scholarship for her next period of studies at her campus.
- The students of vocational school join internships at national companies, so they gain experience for real work. Moreover, they can develop their knowledge and have ability to work \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Jawaban:

##### TASK 1

- Lia Amelia; Ms. Rosiana, Personnel Manager of PT Insan Bakti
- the position of a secretary
- internship
- work under pressure, communication, computer and English skills
- pleasant
- mobile phone (at 08925252545455)

##### TASK 2

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. requirements      | 2. skills             |
| 3. hardworking       | 4. sincerely; chance  |
| 5. Personnel Manager | 6. proficient; vacant |
| 7. cum laude         | 8. under pressure     |



### TASK 11

Write an application letter based on the job vacancy below.

#### Contoh jawaban:

Linda Septiani  
Jl. Mutiara no. 49  
Tanah Laut  
08779966551233

November 19, 2015

Human Resources Manager  
PT Star  
Jl. Samudera no. 45  
Tanah Laut, South Kalimantan

Dear Sir/Madam:

I would like to apply for the position as Human Resources Staff at PT Star, as advertised on your company website.

I graduated with a Bachelor Degree in psychology in 2013. Having two years of work experience at PT Young as human resources staff, I developed a greater understanding about Human Resources Department work and strategies. I experienced in HR assisting with payroll and recruitment.

I am self-motivated, responsible and professional. I have good communication skills, computer literate and have a good command in English, both spoken and written. I believe my strengths and skills make me suitable for this position.

I would appreciate the opportunity to have an interview. I can be reached on my mobile phone, as reflected above. I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,



Linda Septiani



### TASK 13

Read the song lyrics.  
What is the message?

**Contoh jawaban:**

The message of the song is that we should reach our dreams.



### Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. A 2. C 3. E 4. B 5. E  
6. E 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. A

B. Write an application letter.

**Contoh jawaban:**

Didik Mahardika  
Jl. Kepodang no. 89  
Cilacap  
08998989965433

October 31, 2015

Ms. Indriana  
Personnel Manager  
Insan Permata Consultant  
PO BOX 5645 YG

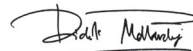
Dear Ms. Indriana:

I am writing to apply for the position of architect, as advertised on job.com on October 30, 2015.

I graduated from Taruna University. My work experience at Lucky Consultant includes a variety of residential, commercial and healthcare sectors. I have managed projects from the initial design stage right through to completion. I am fluent in spoken and written English and Mandarin. I am good at operating a computer, including AutoCAD, Microsoft Office, Adobe and other graphics communication programs.

I enclosed my resume which shows my overall expertise and experience in the field. I would welcome the opportunity for interview. I can be contacted any time at my phone number reflected above. Thank you for your consideration.

Yours sincerely,



Didik Mahardika

# UNIT VI

## What are They like?



### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. describe animals in general,
  - b. use: noun phrases (adjective + noun) and relating verbs.
2. be able to:
  - a. describe animals in general,
  - b. use: noun phrases (adjective + noun) and relating verbs.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be cooperative, brave and active in communicating in English, especially in describing animals in general.



Source: <http://www.hobbycanbefun.blogspot.com>,  
downloaded June 25, 2015

Observe animals around you. Have you seen an animal like the one in the picture? Does your sister/brother, friend or neighbor have such an animal? If he/she does, you may be able to describe its physical appearance, behavior, habitat, diet, etc. When you describe it in common, you have created a report text.

Now, in this unit, you will learn about report texts, especially about animals.





## TASK 1

Read the following nursery rhyme.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru memulai kegiatan dengan meminta peserta didik menyebutkan suara-suara binatang dalam bahasa Inggris.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca nyaring *nursery rhyme* tentang suara-suara binatang berikut secara klasikal, berkelompok, maupun individual.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru menyimak dan mengoreksi pelafalan peserta didik yang kurang tepat.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru membagi peserta didik menjadi beberapa kelompok dan meminta kelompok-kelompok tersebut ke depan membacakan *nursery rhyme* sekaligus memeragakan suara-suara binatang tersebut dengan gerakan yang sesuai.



## Variasi

In pairs, ask and answer questions about the sounds of animals.

Do it in turns.

See the example.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami kembali suara-suara binatang dan contoh tanya jawab berikut.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik bekerja secara berpasangan.
3. Setiap pasangan bertanya jawab tentang suara-suara binatang seperti dalam contoh.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengamati kegiatan peserta didik dan memotivasi peserta didik yang belum aktif agar aktif melakukan tanya jawab.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta beberapa pasangan ke depan kelas untuk memeragakan tanya jawab yang telah mereka lakukan.

### Example:

Student A : What sound does the elephant make?

Student B : It goes, "pawoo pawoo pawoo pawoo".

Student A : It's your turn, please.

Student B : What sound does the bee make?

Student A : It goes, "buzz buzz buzz buzz".

### Contoh jawaban:

Student A : What sound does the elephant make?

Student B : It goes, "pawoo pawoo pawoo pawoo".

Student A : It's your turn, please.

Student B : What sound does the bee make?

Student A : It goes, "buzz buzz buzz buzz".

Student B : Now, your time, please.

Student A : O.K. What sound does the lion make?

Student B : It goes, "roar roar roar roar".

Student A : Your turn, please.

Student B : What sound does the snake make?

Student A : It goes, "hiss hiss hiss hiss".



## TASK 2

Listen to your teacher.

Put a tick (✓) on the picture which is suitable with the text you have heard.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan teks dua kali dan peserta didik menyimak.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mengamati gambar-gambar berikut.
3. Peserta didik memilih gambar yang sesuai dengan teks yang disimak.
4. Selanjutnya, Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas jawaban bersama-sama.
5. Sebagai kegiatan pengembangan, Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat meminta peserta didik tunjuk jari untuk menceritakan kembali isi teks.

### Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

The ostrich is the world's largest and heaviest bird. Its significant weight, around 145kg, prohibits the bird from flying. However, the ostrich has many unique abilities that make it well-adapted to living in the savannas, deserts and open woodlands of central and southern Africa.

The ostrich is equipped with long, muscular legs built for running. Unlike other birds, ostriches have only two toes on each foot which create speed. They can sprint as fast as 70km/h and hold steady speeds of 50km/h. One stride can span 3–5m. When confronted with danger, ostriches can usually outrun predators.

An ostrich diet consists mainly of roots, leaves and seeds, but it will eat whatever is available, like insects, snakes, lizards and rodents. They also swallow sand and pebbles which help them grind the food in their gizzards, unique muscular stomachs. Ostriches have the ability to grind food, so what they eat, other animals cannot digest.

Adopted from: <http://www.animalfactguide.com/animal-facts/ostrich/> (June 13, 2015)

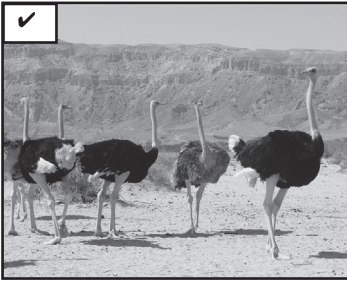
### Jawaban:



Source: <http://www.hobbycanbefun.blogspot.com>, downloaded June 25, 2015



Source: <http://www.ambwallpapers.com>, downloaded June 25, 2015



Source: <http://www.commons.wikimedia.or.>, downloaded June 25, 2015



Source: <http://www.blogs.tallahassee.com.>, downloaded June 25, 2015



## Variasi

### TASK 1

Listen and complete the text based on what you have heard.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru menulis teks rumpang di papan tulis atau menggandakan soal di buku sejumlah peserta didik.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru membacakan kembali teks di TASK 2 sebanyak dua kali dan peserta didik menyimak.
3. Peserta didik diminta melengkapi teks rumpang berdasarkan teks yang disimak.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat membacakan kembali teks tersebut sehingga peserta didik dapat memeriksa kembali jawaban mereka.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik mengecek jawaban bersama-sama.

#### Teks yang dibacakan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

The ostrich is the world's largest and **(1) heaviest** bird. Its significant weight, around 145kg, prohibits the bird from flying. However, the ostrich has many unique abilities that make it well-adapted to living in savannas, **(2) deserts** and open woodlands of central and southern Africa.

The ostrich is equipped with long, muscular legs built for running. Unlike other birds, ostriches have only two **(3) toes** on each foot which create speed. They can sprint as fast as 70km/h and hold steady speeds of 50km/h. One stride can span 3–5m. When confronted with danger, ostriches can usually outrun predators.

An ostrich **(4) diet** consists mainly of roots, leaves and seeds, but it will eat whatever is available, like insects, snakes, lizards and rodents. They also swallow sand and pebbles which help them grind the food in their gizzards, unique, muscular stomachs. Ostriches have the ability to grind food so what they eat, other animals cannot **(5) digest**.

Adopted from: <http://www.animalfactguide.com/animal-facts/ostrich/> (June 13, 2015)

#### Soal yang dikerjakan oleh peserta didik:

The ostrich is the world's largest and **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_ bird. Its significant weight, around 145kg, prohibits the bird from flying. However, the ostrich has many unique abilities that make it well-adapted to living in savannas, **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_ and open woodlands of central and southern Africa.

The ostrich is equipped with long, muscular legs built for running. Unlike other birds, ostriches have only two **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_ on each foot which create speed. They can sprint as fast as 70km/h and hold steady speeds of 50km/h. One stride can span 3–5m. When confronted with danger, ostriches can usually outrun predators.

An ostrich **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_ consists mainly of roots, leaves and seeds, but it will eat whatever is available, like insects, snakes, lizards and rodents. They also swallow sand and pebbles which help them grind the food in their gizzards, unique, muscular stomachs. Ostriches have the ability to grind food, so what they eat, other animals cannot **(5)** \_\_\_\_\_.

#### TASK 2

Answer the questions based on the complete text in TASK 1.

1. What prohibits ostriches from flying?
2. Where do ostriches live?
3. How many toes does an ostrich have?
4. What do ostriches do when they are confronted with danger?
5. Why do ostriches swallow sand and pebbles?

#### Jawaban:

##### TASK 1

1. heaviest
2. deserts
3. toes
4. diet
5. digest

##### TASK 2

1. Their significant weight, around 145kg.
2. In savannas, deserts and open woodlands of central and southern Africa.
3. Four toes.
4. They usually outrun predators.
5. To help them grind the food in their gizzards, a unique muscular stomachs.



## TASK 4

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 3.

#### Jawaban:

1. About 11 pounds (5 kilograms).
2. They die within the first year.
3. In the canopy.
4. They feed on leaves, flowers and fruit.
5. They will leap from a branch, often from great heights and escape with a splash into the water below.
6. They are fast and agile.
7. They can be used as whips to fend off predators.
8. When they are caught.
9. Fiji Island banded iguanas, desert iguanas and Galápagos Islands marine iguanas.
10. It is 'consists of'.



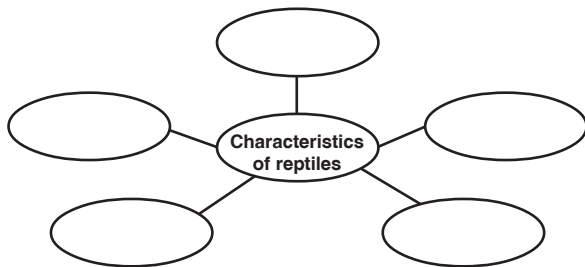
## Variasi

Read the text and complete the chart based on it.

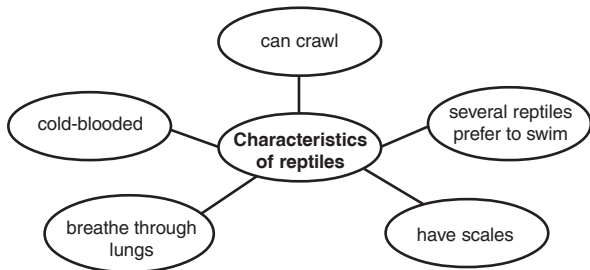
What is a reptile?

The word 'reptile' means crawler. A reptile is an animal that crawls, although a few species swim. Reptiles usually have scales, like fish, but they breathe through lungs, as humans do. Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that the temperature of their blood changes according to the air temperature changes. Snakes, turtles and lizards are reptiles.

Adopted from: Kementerian Pendidikan dan Kebudayaan, *Bahasa Inggris untuk SMA/MA/SMK/MAK Kelas XII*, Jakarta, Kementerian Pendidikan dan Kebudayaan, 2015.



Jawaban:



## TASK 5

Find the words in TASK 3 which have similar meanings to the following words.

Jawaban:

- |                  |               |                |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. popular       | 2. difficult  | 3. properly    |
| 4. common        | 5. stout      | 6. build       |
| 7. appearance    | 8. fast       | 9. sharp       |
| 10. infrequently | 11. extensive | 12. comprise   |
| 13. excellent    | 14. to leap   | 15. endangered |



## TASK 6

Fill in the blanks with the suitable words from TASK 5.

Jawaban:

- |             |                |           |                |
|-------------|----------------|-----------|----------------|
| 1. rarely   | 2. accordingly | 3. strong | 4. body        |
| 5. incisive | 6. appearances | 7. jump   | 8. outstanding |
| 9. uneasy   | 10. well-known |           |                |



## TASK 7

Identify each paragraph of the text in TASK 3. One has been done for you.

Jawaban:

Parts of the Text	Questions to Answer
Paragraph 1	What are iguanas?
Paragraph 2	- How long are iguanas generally? - What weight are iguanas usually?
Paragraph 3	What do iguanas look like?
Paragraph 4	Where do iguanas live?
Paragraph 5	What do iguanas feed on?
Paragraph 6	What are the species of iguanas?
Paragraph 7	When do most captive iguanas die?



## TASK 8

Fill in the following table to analyze the text in TASK 3. One has been done for you.

### Petunjuk Guru

- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami kembali struktur teks *report* di TASK 3 dan kolom-kolom dalam tabel berikut.
- Peserta didik diminta mengisi kolom-kolom dalam tabel tersebut berdasarkan teks.
- Selanjutnya, peserta didik diminta tunjuk jari menyebutkan jawabannya.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik yang lain menyimak jawaban tersebut. Apabila memiliki jawaban yang berbeda, peserta didik tunjuk jari dan menyebutkan jawabannya.

Jawaban:

Text Structure	Questions as Subheading	Noun Words
Classification	What are iguanas?	General information
Descriptions	- How long are iguanas generally? - What weight are iguanas usually?	Physical appearance
	What do iguanas look like?	Appearance and behaviors
	Where do iguanas live?	Habitat
	What do iguanas feed on?	Food
	What are the species of iguanas?	Species
	When do most captive iguanas die?	Other information



## TASK 9

Read the text carefully.

Then, listen to and answer the questions based on the text.

Pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

- What color is an adult Emperor Penguin's head?
- What are the sides of their necks marked with?
- What are the Emperor Penguin's feathers like?
- How long is the Emperor Penguin's normal life span in the wild?
- Where do the Emperor Penguins breed?

Jawaban:

- Its head is black.
- They are marked with a large golden or yellow stripe.
- They are thick and waterproof.
- About twenty years.
- In a place about 60 miles from the coast in the Antarctic interior, where temperatures regularly drop to 40 degrees Celsius.



### Variasi

What do the following words mean?

1. dingy = \_\_\_\_\_
2. stripe = \_\_\_\_\_
3. breast = \_\_\_\_\_
4. waterproof = \_\_\_\_\_
5. entire = \_\_\_\_\_
6. bill = \_\_\_\_\_
7. perimeter = \_\_\_\_\_
8. breed = \_\_\_\_\_
9. interior = \_\_\_\_\_
10. trek = \_\_\_\_\_

**Jawaban:**

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. kusam, suram     | 2. garis, strip    |
| 3. dada             | 4. tahan air       |
| 5. keseluruhan      | 6. paruh           |
| 7. batas pinggir    | 8. berkembang biak |
| 9. bagian pedalaman | 10. perjalanan     |



### TASK 10

Complete the table with the noun phrases used in the text in TASK 9.

**Jawaban:**

No.	Adjective	Noun	Noun Phrase
1.	largest and tallest	penguin	largest and tallest penguin
2.	heaviest	penguin head	heaviest penguin head
3.	black	back	black back
4.	black	tail	black tail
5.	black	wings	black wings
6.	black	stripe	black stripe
7.	large golden or yellow	upper breast	large golden or yellow upper breast
8.	upper	feathers	upper breast feathers
9.	thick, waterproof	entire body	thick, waterproof entire body
10.	entire		



### Variasi

Fill in the table to analyze the text in TASK 9.

Text Structure	Questions as Subheading	Noun Words
Classification	_____	General information
Descriptions	_____	_____
	_____	_____
	_____	_____

**Jawaban:**

Text Structure	Questions as Subheading	Noun Words
Classification	What is the Emperor Penguin?	General information
Descriptions	What does the Emperor Penguin look like?	Physical appearance
	How long does the Emperor Penguin live?	Lifespan
	Where do the Emperor Penguins live?	Habitat



### TASK 11

Read the following texts.



### Variasi

What do the following words mean?

1. dorsal surface = \_\_\_\_\_
2. to fade = \_\_\_\_\_
3. ventral = \_\_\_\_\_
4. streamlined = \_\_\_\_\_
5. fusiform = \_\_\_\_\_
6. anterior = \_\_\_\_\_
7. conically = \_\_\_\_\_
8. fin = \_\_\_\_\_
9. falcate = \_\_\_\_\_
10. offshore = \_\_\_\_\_
11. distinction = \_\_\_\_\_
12. pod = \_\_\_\_\_
13. to encircle = \_\_\_\_\_
14. to herd = \_\_\_\_\_
15. prey = \_\_\_\_\_

**Jawaban:**

1. permukaan punggung
2. menjadi pudar
3. yang berkaitan dengan perut
4. yang singkat
5. bentuk penyatuan/peleburan
6. depan
7. dengan berbentuk kerucut
8. sirip
9. langkah
10. di lepas pantai
11. perbedaan
12. kelopak, kulit
13. mengelilingi
14. mengumpulkan, menggembalakan
15. mangsa



### TASK 12

Work in pairs.

Answer the questions based on the texts in TASK 11.

**Petunjuk Guru**

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca kembali dua teks di TASK 11 dan memahaminya.
2. Selanjutnya, peserta didik diminta bekerja secara berpasangan.
3. Setiap pasangan memahami pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang tersedia dan mendiskusikan jawaban dari pertanyaan-pertanyaan tersebut.
4. Kemudian, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik berlomba-lomba tunjuk jari menyebutkan jawabannya. Jawaban dapat bervariasi sehingga saling melengkapi.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas jawaban bersama-sama.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. Yes, they are factual or information reports about animals. The animal which is described in Text 1 still exists, whereas the animal which is described in Text 2 has been extinct.

2. The similarities between the two texts are:
- they describe the animals in common;
  - they use adjectives to describe the animals;
  - they use scientific terms related to animals;
  - they use relating verbs.
- The differences between the two texts are:
- Text 1 uses verbs present whereas Text 2 uses verbs past.
3. In terms of presentation format and writing, the similarities of the two texts is:
- they are factual or information reports in written forms so the structure of each text consists of general classification and descriptions.
- In terms of presentation format and writing, the differences of the two texts is:
- Text 1 is longer than Text 2 (Text 1 consists of five paragraphs, while Text 2 consists of three paragraphs).



### TASK 13

Fill in the blanks with suitable relating verbs.

**Jawaban:**

1. is            2. are            3. has been  
4. were        5. was



### Variasi

Reread the text in TASK 9.  
Write the sentences that have relating verbs.  
Underline the relating verbs in those sentences.

**Jawaban:**

- The Emperor Penguin is the world's largest and tallest penguin.
- It is also the heaviest penguin, with several individuals recorded at approximately 100 pounds.
- Adults have a black head, back, tail and wings.
- The underparts are dingy white.
- In addition, there is a varying amount of gold on the upper breast.
- Like most penguins, the Emperor Penguin has thick, waterproof feathers that cover its entire body except for the bill and feet.
- It is the only species of penguin to breed during the Antarctic winter.
- The trek from the Antarctic coastline to the breeding grounds is an inspiration for "March of the Penguins".



### TASK 14

Complete the following text with the correct forms of the relating verbs in brackets.

**Jawaban:**

1. was            2. is            3. appears        4. is  
5. were           6. was        7. were            8. is  
9. have been    10. is        11. are            12. is



### Variasi

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 14.

- What is the name of the Haast's Eagle in Maori legend?
- What width was the Haast's Eagle's wingspan?
- What does the size and strength of its legs and talons indicate?
- What was the color of its plumage?
- "... making them as large as those of a tiger!" (Paragraph 3) What does the underlined word refer to?

**Jawaban:**

- It is Pouakai.
- It was between 2 and 3 meters.
- It indicates that it was an effective and active predator, able to kill very large prey.
- It is pure specification.
- It refers to the Haast's Eagle's claws.



### TASK 15

Arrange the following paragraphs to form a sequential text.

**Jawaban:**

The correct arrangement of the paragraphs is 4–1–5–3–2.



### Variasi

Complete the following statements based on the text in TASK 15.

- The Nubian Vulture has a \_\_\_\_\_ head and neck.
- It can spread its wings over \_\_\_\_\_ long each.
- When it spots unfortunate creatures, it \_\_\_\_\_ for them.
- Its \_\_\_\_\_ can break the bones of its prey into several pieces.
- The animals which are able to interrupt its feast are \_\_\_\_\_.

**Jawaban:**

1. naked            2. 3 feet            3. dives straight  
4. beak            5. lions and hyenas



### TASK 16

Copy the sequential text in TASK 15.

Circle the noun phrases (adjective + noun) and underline the relating verbs in the text.

**Jawaban:**

The Nubian Vulture—with its naked head and neck—is the most useful garbage collector. This cousin of the eagle soars above the savanna like a glider, spreading its wings, which measure over 3 feet long each.

The plains are littered with dead or dying animals.

Several are old, sick or injured; a few were killed during fights; and others are the leftovers from a carnivore's feast. When the Nubian vulture's sharp eye spots one of these unfortunate creatures, it dives straight for it.

The Nubian Vulture's powerful beak can break the bones of its prey into a thousand pieces. It swallows muscle, skin and meat. Only lions and hyenas are able to interrupt its feast.

It can eat over 2 pounds of meat each meal. It is a useful scavenger. By ridding the environment of rotting flesh, it keeps colonies of germ-carrying flies in check.



### TASK 17

Complete the text with suitable adjectives or relating verbs.

**Jawaban:**

- |        |          |        |        |
|--------|----------|--------|--------|
| 1. is  | 2. wings | 3. are | 4. are |
| 5. has | 6. male  | 7. are | 8. eat |



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 17.

- How do the wings of most crickets lie?
- What are crickets well known for?
- How do male crickets produce sound?
- What is the function of the songs?
- Where can we find crickets?

#### TASK 2

Copy the text in TASK 17.

Circle the noun phrases (adjective + noun) and underline the relating verbs in the text.

**Jawaban:**

#### TASK 1

- They lie flat over each other on top of their backs.
- They are well known for their songs.
- By rubbing their two front wings together.
- To help male and female crickets find each other.
- In pastures, meadows and along roads.

#### TASK 2

A cricket is a type of jumping insect related to the grasshopper. Crickets differ from grasshoppers in several ways. The wings of most crickets lie flat over each other on top of their backs. Other crickets only have tiny wings or are wingless. The slender antennae are much longer than the body in most kinds of crickets.

Crickets are well known for their songs. These songs are produced primarily by the males. Each kind of cricket has a different song, usually trills or a series of chirps. Crickets produce sound by rubbing their two front wings together. They hear sound with organs in their front legs. Their songs help male and female crickets find each other.

Male tree crickets sing in chorus. Their song are high-pitched treet-treet-treets.

Crickets are commonly found in pastures, meadows and along roads. These insects eat plants and the remains of other insects.



### TASK 18

Write a factual or information report about an animal. Find references in books or on the Internet. Use the following clues.

**Contoh jawaban:**

A salamander is an amphibian that has four legs, a long and slender body and a long tail. Despite their lizard-like appearance, salamanders are most closely related to the smaller amphibious lizard, the newt.

Salamanders are found all over the world, generally in more temperate climates. All species of salamanders are aquatic or semi-aquatic due to their amphibious nature and permeable skin. The moist skin of the salamander means that the salamander inhabits aquatic regions or wetlands.

There are more than 700 different species of recognized salamanders worldwide from the smaller species of newt to the Chinese Giant salamander which can grow to nearly 2 meters long. All species of salamanders look very similar in appearance, but as with lizards, different species of salamanders can have less limbs than normal meaning that a few species of salamanders have a more eel-like appearance.

Most species of salamanders are brightly colored, particularly the male salamanders during the breeding season, when their colors become brighter and more intense in order to try to attract a female. Those species of salamanders that live underground are often either white or pink in color due to the fact that their skin is never exposed to the sun.

The skin of salamanders secretes mucus, which helps keep the animal's moist when on dry land and maintains their salt balance while in water, as well as providing a lubricant during swimming. Salamanders also secrete poison from glands in their skin and several others additionally have skin glands for secreting courtship pheromones.

Adopted from: <http://a-z-animals.com/animals/salamander/> (June 16, 2015)



### TASK 19

Circle the noun phrases (adjective + noun) and underline the relating verbs in the text you have written in TASK 18.

**Contoh jawaban:**

A salamander is an amphibian that has four legs, a long and slender body and a long tail. Despite their lizard-like appearance, salamanders are most closely related to the smaller amphibious lizard, the newt.

Salamanders are found all over the world, generally in more temperate climates. All species of salamanders are aquatic or semi-aquatic due to their amphibious nature and permeable skin. The moist skin of the salamander means that the salamander inhabits aquatic regions or wetlands.

There are more than 700 **different species** of recognized salamanders worldwide from the **smaller species** of newt to the **Chinese Giant salamander** which can grow to nearly 2 meters long. All species of salamanders **look** very similar in appearance, but as with lizards, **different species** of salamanders can have **less limbs** than **normal meaning** that a few species of salamanders **have** a more eel-like appearance.

Most species of salamanders **are** brightly colored, particularly the male **salamanders during** the **breeding season**, when their colors **become** brighter and more intense in order to try to attract a female. Those species of salamanders that live underground **are** often either white or pink in color due to the fact that their skin is never exposed to the sun.

The skin of salamanders secretes mucus, which helps keep the animal's moist when on **dry land** and maintains their salt balance while in water, as well as providing a lubricant during swimming. Salamanders also secrete poison from glands in their skin and several others additionally **have** skin glands for secreting courtship pheromones.



## TASK 21

Read the song lyrics.  
What is the message?

### Contoh jawaban:

The song is about a person who motivates his friend not to be afraid of lions, because the lions are sleeping.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

### Jawaban:

1. B    2. E    3. A    4. D    5. C
6. C    7. A    8. C    9. A    10. C

B. Write a factual or information report about an animal.

### Contoh jawaban:

The bearded dragon's scientific name is Pogona Vitticeps. Bearded dragons are called "bearded" because the spikes and scales they have around their head resembles a beard. They use this as a defense mechanism and will expand their throat whenever they feel threatened.

Bearded dragons are medium sized lizards which are generally 12–24 inches in length from their head to the tip of their tail. There are many different bearded dragon colors which occasionally can help tell you what environment they came from.

The bearded dragon's head is triangular shaped and contains rows of spikes that resemble thorns. Beneath their heads, the bearded dragon will have rows of spiked scales which when puffed up resembles a beard. These scales can also change colors, turning darker, when breeding.

The bearded dragon is supported by four stout legs and they have well-muscled flat bodies with a row of spikes that runs down each side of the abdomen. Their tail is generally half the length of their body, and unlike other lizards will not fall off and regenerate when threatened.

Bearded dragons are usually gentle by nature and you rarely hear of an aggressive bearded dragon, especially towards humans. In fact, bearded dragons do not attack when threatened, instead they freeze, puff their throat, and may change colors.

Adopted from: <http://www.thebeardeddragon.org/bearded-dragon.php> (June 16, 2015)

# UNIT VII

## Beware of Our Nature

### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. describe natural disasters in general,
  - b. use simple present tense.
2. be able to:
  - a. describe natural disasters in general,
  - b. use simple present tense.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be brave, cooperative and active in communicating in English.



Source: <http://www.quietkinetic.wordpress.com>, downloaded June 30, 2015

Recently India and Pakistan were struck by heat waves and thousands of people died due to the disaster. Do you know what heat waves are? From its name, we can guess that heat waves deal with hot weather. As a natural disaster, it is dangerous and causes a lot of destructions, even casualties.

Now, in this unit, you will learn factual or information reports about natural phenomena.





### TASK 1

Read the following jokes.

What are the humorous points of the jokes?

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami lelucon berikut dan mencari makna kata-kata baru. Peserta didik dapat menggunakan kamus.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik secara berpasangan membaca nyaring lelucon tersebut.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik tunjuk jari untuk menyebutkan bagian lucu lelucon tersebut.
4. Sebagai kegiatan penyegaran, Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat memberikan beberapa pertanyaan lelucon dan peserta didik yang mengetahui jawabannya dapat tunjuk jari, serta menyebutkan jawabannya.

#### Contoh jawaban:

The humorous points of the jokes:

1. The words "name a city" is used to ask the student to mention the name of a city. Meanwhile, the answer "electricity" doesn't show the name of a city.
2. The question is about a bear that doesn't wear socks, but the answer doesn't show a bear. It only has similar pronunciations.
3. The words "which is the longest word" is meant to ask about the word with longest letters, but the answer is about the content of the word ("mile" shows long distance so the word "smiles" is the longest word).
4. The question is about the activity of stopping at green and going at red signs. However, the answer doesn't relate to signs. It is interpreted as our way in eating a watermelon ('green' symbolizes the watermelon skin and 'red' symbolizes its flesh).
5. The question is about the appearance of thunder and lightning in a laboratory, but the answer is about the word dealing with storm.



### Variasi

Complete the following jokes.

1. Question : Why couldn't Cinderella be a good soccer player?  
Answer : \_\_\_\_\_
2. Question : What starts with E, ends with E and only has one letter?  
Answer : \_\_\_\_\_
3. Question : If you drop a white hat into the Red Sea, what does it become?  
Answer : \_\_\_\_\_
4. Question : What is white when it's dirty and black when it's clean?  
Answer : \_\_\_\_\_
5. Question : What letter of the alphabet is an insect?  
Answer : \_\_\_\_\_
6. Question : What has many keys but can't open any doors?  
Answer : \_\_\_\_\_
7. Question : What is orange and sounds like parrot?  
Answer : \_\_\_\_\_

8. Question : What did the ocean say to the beach?

Answer : \_\_\_\_\_

Adopted from: <http://iteslj.org/cjokes.html> (December 11, 2014)

#### Jawaban:

1. She lost her shoe, she ran away from the ball and her coach was a pumpkin
2. An envelope
3. Wet
4. A blackboard
5. B (bee)
6. A piano
7. A carrot
8. Nothing, it just waved



### TASK 2

Look at the pictures.

Write the name of each natural disaster under the picture.

#### Jawaban:

1. A flood.
2. A volcanic eruption.
3. An avalanche.
4. A tornado.



### Variasi

Match each natural disaster with its correct definition from the box.

- a. Flows of water that contain large amounts of suspended particles and silt.
- b. Extended periods of unusually hot weather that affect human and animal's health as well as energy use.
- c. The inundation of water, occurring within 6 hours of causative events (heavy rain, dam break, levee failure, rapid, snowmelt and ice jams) and often within 2 hours of the start of high intensity rainfall.
- d. Dangerous winter storms that are a combination of blowing snow and wind resulting in very low visibilities.
- e. Rapid flows of snow down a hill or mountainside.
- f. The warming of the central to eastern tropical Pacific that occurs every two to seven years, on average.
- g. Low-pressure systems which develop in the tropics and are sufficiently intense to produce sustained gale force winds of at least 63 km/h.
- h. The sudden occurrences of violent discharges of steam and volcanic materials.
- i. Whirlwinds produced by atmospheric conditions, mainly extremely low pressure, during severe thunderstorms.

1. heat waves
2. volcanic eruptions
3. avalanches
4. flash floods
5. tropical cyclones
6. mudflows
7. tornadoes
8. blizzards

#### Jawaban:

1. b
2. h
3. e
4. c
5. g
6. a
7. i
8. d



### TASK 4

Find the synonyms of the following words in the text in TASK 3.

**Jawaban:**

- |              |              |                 |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. extended  | 2. to affect | 3. particularly |
| 4. excessive | 5. possibly  | 6. persistent   |
| 7. to create | 8. danger    | 9. common       |
10. occasional



### TASK 5

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 3.

**Jawaban:**

- They are extended periods of unusually hot weather that affect human and animal's health as well as energy use.
- During summer months when normal temperatures are already high.
- The persistent ridge and sinking air.
- He/she will sweat to release heat and provide a source of moisture for evaporation, which cools the skin surface.
- In the northern and southern hemisphere.



### TASK 6

Read the following texts.

What are the similarities and differences between the two texts?

#### Petunjuk Guru

- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mengamati dua teks berikut dan mencari makna kata-kata baru.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca nyaring teks tersebut secara bergantian. Bapak/Ibu Guru menyimak dan mengoreksi pelafalan yang kurang tepat.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami isi kedua teks tersebut dan mengidentifikasi persamaan dan perbedaan kedua teks tersebut.
- Selanjutnya, Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas jawaban bersama-sama.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memberi sedikit penjelasan berkaitan dengan jenis-jenis teks tersebut.

**Jawaban:**

The similarity between Text 1 and Text 2: both of them have similar topics, i.e volcanic eruptions.

The differences between Text 1 and Text 2:

- Text 1 gives general information about volcanic eruptions so it is called a factual or information report; while Text 2 reports news about a volcanic eruption so it is called a news item text.
- Text 1 uses verbs present; while Text 2 uses verbs past.



### Variasi

Answer the following questions based on the texts in TASK 6.

**Text 1**

- What is a volcanic eruption?
- When does a volcanic eruption occur?
- What is the most dangerous consequence of a volcanic eruption?
- In what condition does the phenomenon happen?
- What is the pyroclastic flow formed from?

**Text 2**

- What is the news about?
- How many people have been evacuated from Sumatra?
- Where were the people who evacuated from?
- What did BNPB do on Friday?
- According to BNPB, what happened on Mount Sinabung earlier in the week?

**Jawaban:**

**Text 1**

- It is the sudden occurrence of a violent discharge of steam and volcanic materials.
- When lava and gas are discharged from a volcanic vent.
- A 'glowing avalanche'.
- When freshly erupted magma forms hot pyroclastic flow which has temperatures of up to 1,200 degrees.
- It is formed from rock fragments following a volcanic explosion, the flow surges down the flanks of the volcano at speeds of up to several hundred kilometers per hour, to distances often up to 10 kms and occasionally as far as 40 kms from the original eruption site.

**Text 2**

- It is about thick plumes of volcanic ash and flowing lava that are spewing from Mount Sinabung.
- About 2,700 people.
- Four villages located in south and southeast of the volcano's crater.
- It raised the alert status level for the volcano.
- Mount Sinabung's lava dome, rounded mounds built by thick magma, had increased volume and was unstable.



### TASK 7

In groups, discuss about an avalanche.

Use the following questions as hints.

Report the result of their discussion before the class.

#### Petunjuk Guru

- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik bekerja secara berkelompok yang terdiri atas tiga atau empat orang dan memahami perintah kegiatan.
- Setiap kelompok diminta berdiskusi tentang bencana alam salju longsor (*avalanche*).
- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik melaporkan hasil diskusi mereka.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru senantiasa memotivasi peserta didik untuk mencari referensi yang berkaitan dengan bencana alam.

**Contoh jawaban:**

We have discussed about an avalanche. It is a natural disaster. It is a rapid flow of snow down a hill or mountainside. Avalanches deal with hot temperature. When the temperature increases, the snow slides down the slopes of mountains. Avalanches usually take place on higher or mountainous areas which are covered by snow.

We found the information about an avalanche for the first time on the Internet.



**TASK 8**

Read the text and understand the structure of the text.

**Petunjuk Guru**

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mengamati teks berikut dan strukturnya.
2. Kemudian peserta didik diminta memahami teks dan mencari makna kata-kata baru. Peserta didik dapat menggunakan kamus.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca nyaring teks. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengoreksi pelafalan yang kurang tepat.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami penjelasan dalam *Supporting Feature*. Bila peserta didik mengalami kesulitan memahami, Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat menjelaskan.
5. Sebagai pengembangan, peserta didik dapat diminta mencari beberapa contoh teks *factual/information report* yang lain.



**TASK 9**

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 8.

**Jawaban:**

1. It is a rapid flow of snow down a hill or mountainside.
2. On wintertime, particularly from December to April.
3. A mass of snow and a slope for it to slide down.
4. It will sluff, or slide, down the front of the windshield, often in small slabs.
5. 230,000 cubic meters (300,000 cubic yards) of snow.
6. Three. They are the starting zone, avalanche track and runout zone.
7. The runout zone.
8. Weather, temperature, slope steepness, slope orientation (whether the slope is facing north or south), wind direction, terrain, vegetation and general snowpack conditions.



**TASK 10**

Read the following words.  
What do the words mean?

**Jawaban:**

- |                          |                      |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. salju longsor         | 2. kematian          |
| 3. meluncur              | 4. kaca depan        |
| 5. lempeng, irisan besar | 6. pemain ski        |
| 7. memicu, menggerakkan  | 8. jalur             |
| 9. mematahkan            | 10. saluran, terusan |
| 11. petak                | 12. parasut          |
| 13. tanah terbuka        | 14. puing            |
| 15. medan                |                      |



**TASK 11**

Complete the following sentences with the words from TASK 10, correctly.

**Jawaban:**

- |               |            |               |
|---------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. clearings  | 2. skier   | 3. slabs      |
| 4. slide      | 5. track   | 6. windshield |
| 7. debris     | 8. terrain | 9. fatalities |
| 10. triggered |            |               |



**TASK 12**

Fill in the following table to analyze the text in TASK 8. One has been done for you.

**Petunjuk Guru**

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mengamati teks dengan struktur teksnya di TASK 8.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami kembali teks tersebut paragraf demi paragraf, kemudian melengkapi tabel berikut.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik tunjuk jari menyebutkan jawabannya.
4. Selanjutnya Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas jawaban bersama-sama.

**Jawaban:**

Part of the Text	Question to Answer
Classification	Paragraph 1: What is an avalanche?
Descriptions	Paragraph 2: When do avalanches happen?
	Paragraph 3: What do avalanches look like?
	Paragraph 4: How much snow is released during an avalanche?
	Paragraph 5: What are parts of an avalanche?
	Paragraph 6: What factors affect the likelihood of an avalanche?



**Variasi**

**TASK 1**

Complete the text with the words from the box, correctly.

- |              |             |            |
|--------------|-------------|------------|
| a. banks     | b. ruin     | c. limited |
| d. waves     | e. too much | f. cause   |
| g. dangerous |             |            |

A flood is a natural event that can have far reaching effects on people and the environment. Put simply, a flood is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ water in the 'wrong' place!

A flood is caused by a combination of heavy rainfall causing river/oceans to over break their (2) \_\_\_\_\_, and can happen at any time of the year, not just in the winter.

Floods generally develop over a period of days, when there is too much rainwater to fit in the rivers and water spreads over the land next to it (the 'floodplain').

Coastal areas are also at risk from sea flooding, when storms and high (3) \_\_\_\_\_ bring seawater onto land. The worst cases of flooding may occur if there is a combination of storms, 'spring tides' and low atmospheric pressure.

Flooding can be very (4) \_\_\_\_\_. Floodwater can seriously disrupt public and personal transport by cutting off roads and railway lines, as well as communication links when telephone lines are damaged. Severe floods do not only (5) \_\_\_\_\_ homes/businesses and destroy personal property, but the water left behind causes further damage to property and contents. The environment and wildlife is also at risk when damage to businesses causes the accidental release of toxic materials like paints, pesticides, gasoline etc.

Adopted from: <http://www.watersafetykids.co.uk/pdfs/Flooding.pdf> (June 25, 2015)

### TASK 2

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 1.

1. What is the purpose of the text?
2. What causes a flood?
3. When are coastal areas at risk from sea flooding?
4. In what conditions do the worst cases of flooding probably occur?
5. How are the environment and wildlife at risk from floods?

### TASK 3

Complete the following table to analyze the text in TASK 1.

Part of the Text	Question to Answer
Classification	Paragraph 1: What is an avalanche?
Descriptions	Paragraph 2: _____
	Paragraph 3: _____
	Paragraph 4: _____

Jawaban:

#### TASK 1

1. e 2. a 3. d 4. g 5. b

#### TASK 2

1. To give general information about floods.
2. A combination of heavy rainfall causing rivers/oceans to over flow their banks.
3. When storms and big waves bring seawater onto the land.
4. If there is a combination of storms, 'spring tides' and low atmospheric pressure.
5. The damage to businesses as the effect of floods causes the accidental release of toxic materials like paints, pesticides, gasoline, etc.

### TASK 3

Part of the Text	Question to Answer
Classification	Paragraph 1: What is an avalanche?
Descriptions	Paragraph 2: What causes floods?
	Paragraph 3: What areas are at risk from sea flooding?
	Paragraph 4: What are the effects of floods?



### TASK 13

Complete the following text with the correct words from the box.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami teks berikut dan kata-kata dalam kotak.
2. Peserta didik diminta melengkapi teks dengan kata-kata dalam kotak dengan tepat.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas jawaban bersama-sama.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami penjelasan tentang *simple present tense* dalam *Supporting Feature*.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menyebutkan contoh kalimat yang menggunakan *simple present tense*.
6. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk mencari referensi yang berkaitan dengan *simple present tense*.

Jawaban:

1. f 2. d 3. j 4. b  
5. i 6. e 7. a 8. h



### TASK 14

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 13.

Jawaban:

1. It is a low-pressure system which develops in the tropics and is sufficiently intense to produce sustained gale force winds of at least 63 km/h.
2. If the sustained wind reaches hurricane force of at least 118km/h.
3. Storm surge, or coastal inundation by seawater.
4. When it impacts on the coast or further inland as it weakens to become a tropical depression.
5. It is a raised dome of water about 60 to 80 kilometers across and typically about two to five meters higher than the normal tide level.



## Variasi

### TASK 1

What do the following words mean?

1. cyclone = \_\_\_\_\_
2. sufficiently = \_\_\_\_\_
3. sustained = \_\_\_\_\_
4. gale = \_\_\_\_\_
5. force = \_\_\_\_\_
6. adversely = \_\_\_\_\_
7. unfavorable = \_\_\_\_\_
8. storm surge = \_\_\_\_\_
9. inland = \_\_\_\_\_
10. southerly = \_\_\_\_\_
11. latitude = \_\_\_\_\_
12. to wreak = \_\_\_\_\_
13. havoc = \_\_\_\_\_
14. hazard = \_\_\_\_\_
15. dome = \_\_\_\_\_

### TASK 2

Underline the sentences in paragraphs 3 and 4 of the text in TASK 13, which use simple present tense.

Jawaban:

#### TASK 1

1. topan
2. cukup
3. terus-menerus
4. badai, angin ribut
5. tenaga
6. secara negative/berlawanan
7. tidak menguntungkan/menyenangkan
8. gelombang badai
9. pedalaman
10. selatan
11. lintang
12. melampiasikan
13. malapetaka
14. bahaya
15. kubah

#### TASK 2

Rainfall can be associated with a tropical cyclone when it impacts the coast or further inland as it weakens to become a tropical depression. Heavy rain from tropical cyclones or tropical depressions can often reach Australia's more southerly latitudes where the rainfall is a major source of water for the country's inland river and ground water systems. Flooding can wreak havoc over vast areas, inundating land, isolating communities and destroying infrastructure.

Potentially the most dangerous hazard associated with a tropical cyclone which makes landfall is storm surge. Storm surge has been responsible for more deaths than any other feature of tropical cyclones. Storm surge is a raised dome of water about 60 to 80 kilometers across and typically about two to five meters higher than the normal tide level. It is caused by a combination of strong winds driving water onshore and the lower atmospheric pressure in a tropical cyclone. In the southern hemisphere the onshore winds occur to the left of the tropical cyclone's path. In Australia, this is the east side on the north west and north coasts and the south side on the east coast.



## TASK 15

Arrange the sentences to form a sequential text.

Jawaban:

The correct arrangement of the sentences is 5-3-7-1-6-4-2.



## Variasi

Complete the following statements based on the sequential text in TASK 15.

1. The text is aimed at \_\_\_\_\_.
2. A mudflow contains \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A mudflow has higher \_\_\_\_\_ than a streamflow.
4. Mudflows occur on \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Mudflows may rush down at \_\_\_\_\_ at speed.

Jawaban:

1. giving general description about mudflows
2. large amounts of suspended particles and silt
3. density and viscosity
4. steep slopes where vegetation is not sufficient to prevent rapid erosion; gentle slopes if other conditions are met
5. 100 km (60 miles) per hour



## TASK 16

Underline the sentences in the sequential text in TASK 15, which use simple present tense.

Jawaban:

A mudflow is a flow of water that contains large amounts of suspended particles and silt. It has higher density and viscosity than a streamflow and can deposit only the coarsest part of its load; this causes irreversible sediment entrainment. Its high viscosity will not allow it to flow as far as a water flow. Mudflows occur on steep slopes where vegetation is not sufficient to prevent rapid erosion, but they can occur on gentle slopes if other conditions are met. They may rush down a mountainside at speeds as high as 100 km (60 miles) per hour and can cause great damage to life and property. Boulders as large as houses have been moved by mudflows.

Adopted from: <http://www.britannica.com/science/mudflow> (June 22, 2015)



## TASK 17

In pairs, ask and answer questions about the text in TASK 15. Do it in turns.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik bekerja secara berpasangan, serta memahami kembali teks di TASK 15.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta setiap pasangan peserta didik bertanya jawab tentang teks tersebut secara bergantian. Bapak/Ibu Guru berkeliling mengamati kegiatan yang dilakukan oleh peserta didik dan mengoreksi pelafalan yang kurang tepat.

- Bapak/Ibu Guru senantiasa memotivasi peserta didik untuk aktif melakukan komunikasi dalam bahasa Inggris.

**Contoh jawaban:**

- Student A : What is a mudflow?  
 Student B : It is a flow of water that contains large amounts of suspended particles and silt.  
 Student A : Now, it's your turn, please.  
 Student B : O.K. Where do mudflows happen?  
 Student A : On steep slopes where vegetation is not sufficient to prevent rapid erosion and on gentle slopes if other conditions are met.  
 Student B : Now, it's your turn to ask me a question.  
 Student A : What are the effects of mudflows?  
 Student B : They can cause great damages to life and property. Boulders as large as houses have been moved by mudflows.



**TASK 18**

Fill in the blanks with the words in brackets.  
 Use simple present forms.

**Jawaban:**

- |          |             |            |
|----------|-------------|------------|
| 1. is    | 2. happens  | 3. slip    |
| 4. is    | 5. starts   | 6. has     |
| 7. are   | 8. happen   | 9. follows |
| 10. is   | 11. happens | 12. is     |
| 13. have | 14. are     | 15. occur  |



**Variasi**

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 18.

- When does an earthquake happen?
- What is the surface where the two blocks slip called?
- What is the hypocenter?
- What are foreshocks?
- How long can aftershocks continue?

**Jawaban:**

- When two blocks of earth suddenly slip past one another.
- The fault or fault plane.
- The location below the earth's surface where the earthquake starts.
- They are smaller earthquakes that happen in the same place as the larger earthquakes follow.
- They can continue for weeks, months, and even years after the mainshock.



**TASK 19**

Write a factual or information report about a natural disaster.  
 Find references on the Internet or in books.  
 Use the following questions for hints.

**Petunjuk Guru**

- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menentukan bencana alam yang akan ditulis.
- Peserta didik mencari informasi tentang bencana alam tersebut di internet atau buku-buku referensi dengan menggunakan pertanyaan-pertanyaan panduan berikut.

- Kemudian peserta didik membuat teks *report* dengan tema tersebut.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik melaporkan tulisan yang mereka buat.

**Contoh jawaban:**

El Niño is a naturally occurring event in the equatorial region which causes temporary changes in the world climate. Originally, El Niño was the name used for warmer than normal sea surface temperatures in the Pacific Ocean off the coast of South America. Now, El Niño has come to refer to a whole complex of Pacific Ocean sea-surface temperature changes and global weather events. The ocean warming off South America is just one of these events.

In normal, non-El Niño conditions, trade winds blow in a westerly direction along the equator. These winds pile up warm surface water in the western Pacific, so the sea surface is as much as 18 inches higher in the western Pacific than in the eastern Pacific. These trade winds are one of the main sources of fuel for the Humboldt Current. The Humboldt Current is a cold ocean current which flows north along the coasts of Chile and Peru, then turns west and warms as it moves out into the Central Pacific. So, the normal situation is warmer water in the western Pacific, cooler in the eastern.

El Niños occur irregularly approximately every two to seven years. Warm water generally appears off the coast of South America close to Christmas, and reaches its peak warmth in the eastern Pacific during the late fall of the following year. After peaking, the waters will tend to cool slowly through the winter and spring of the next year. Effects can be felt continually around the globe for more than a year, though this is generally not the case in any one place.

El Niños affect the environment, especially the sea life. In non-El Niño years, upwelling of deep, cold ocean water brings up nutrients that lie near the bottom. Fish living in the upper waters feed plankton that are dependent on these nutrients. Kelp forests also depend on cool, nutrient-rich water for survival and growth. An El Niño reduces the upwelling of cold water off the coast of the Americas. When this happens, fish either die or migrate into areas where they'll find more to eat. With the fish gone, sea birds that depend on them may die or go elsewhere. Kelp forests are often destroyed by storms and ocean swells.

Adopted from: <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/elinino.asp> (June 22, 2015)



**TASK 21**

Read the song lyrics.  
 What is the message?

**Contoh jawaban:**

The song is about a friendship that has not been stable and will crash down like an avalanche.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. D   2. A   3. B   4. B   5. C  
6. E   7. D   8. A   9. C   10. B

B. Write a factual or information report about a natural disaster or natural phenomenon.

**Contoh jawaban:**

La Niña is a natural disaster, opposite to El Niño. La Niña means *The Little Girl* in Spanish. It is also sometimes called *El Viejo*, *anti-El Niño*, or simply "a cold event".

La Niña are most likely to intensify during northern fall, peak during the winter and subside in the spring. During a La Niña year, winter temperatures are warmer than normal in the Southeast and cooler than normal in the Northwest.

La Niña episodes represent periods of below-average sea surface temperatures across the east-central Equatorial Pacific. Global climate La Niña impacts tend to be opposite those of El Niño impacts. In the tropics, ocean temperature variations in La Niña also tend to be opposite those of El Niño.

Although La Niña can develop independently of El Niño, it often materializes immediately after an El Niño event, as Kelvin waves and other phenomena cause the ocean to "bounce back" overcorrecting the changes initially brought by El Niño.

The La Niña pattern involves a strengthening rather than a partial reversal of both trade winds and the larger Walker Circulation. In part because La Niña more closely resembles the neutral state of the Pacific, it is somewhat easier for a La Niña event to last longer (up to 2–3 years) than an El Niño, which rarely persists for more than a year at a time.

Adopted from: – <http://oceanservice.noaa.gov/facts/ninonina.html> (June 22, 2015)  
– <http://www2.ucar.edu/news/backgrounders/el-nino-la-nina-enso> (June 22, 2015)

# UNIT VIII

## Let's Work Together!

### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should be:

1. able to understand how to:
  - a. present and write factual reports concerning social phenomena, and
  - b. use gerunds.
2. able to:
  - a. present and write factual reports concerning social phenomena, and
  - b. use gerunds.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English.
2. be honest, polite, disciplined, responsible and kind to everyone.



Yuda, his family and the neighbors are cooperating, mutually. They are cleaning the neighborhood. They feel happy to do it hand in hand so everything is done quickly.

In this unit you will learn about social phenomena in the form of report texts. Please read and do the tasks in this unit thoroughly. Practice your English skills frequently.





### TASK 1

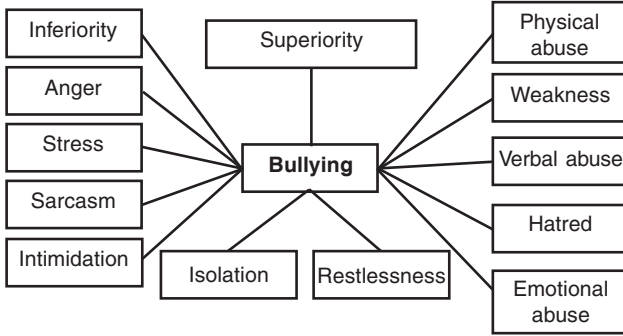
Work in groups of four students.  
Discuss and write as many words connected to bullying as you can.

#### Petunjuk Guru

Kegiatan ini bertujuan meningkatkan keterampilan dan keberanian peserta didik mengungkapkan pendapat mereka menggunakan bahasa Inggris.

1. Peserta didik diminta membuat kelompok yang terdiri atas empat orang. Mereka sebaiknya membuat kelompok dengan teman-teman yang duduknya berjauhan.
2. Setiap kelompok diminta menuliskan kata-kata atau frasa-frasa yang berkaitan dengan *bullying*. Setiap anggota kelompok sebaiknya dimintai pendapat.
3. Setelah selesai, setiap kelompok diminta membacakan hasilnya. Kelompok lain diminta menulis kata-kata atau frasa-frasa dari kelompok lain yang belum mereka tulis.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan.

Contoh jawaban:



### TASK 2

Read the words and find their meanings.  
You will read the words in the text in TASK 3.

Jawaban:

1. tidak memadai, tidak cukup
2. mengecilkan, meremehkan
3. gangguan, godaan
4. merendahkan
5. mengasingkan dari masyarakat
6. jelas, nyata
7. penghasut
8. usaha
9. memaksa, menggerakkan
10. licik



### TASK 3

Read the text carefully.  
Then, listen to and answer the questions.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik diminta membaca teks berikut dalam hati.
2. Selanjutnya, beberapa peserta didik diminta membaca teks tersebut secara bergiliran dengan suara nyaring dan dengan pelafalan yang benar. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi

contoh pengucapan yang benar jika ada peserta didik yang masih mengucapkan kata-kata dengan pelafalan yang kurang tepat.

3. Setelah itu, Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan pertanyaan-pertanyaan dan peserta didik menjawabnya secara lisan dan bergiliran. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan membetulkan jawaban temannya yang dirasa kurang tepat.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai dan balikan, serta memotivasi peserta didik agar terus aktif dalam kegiatan pembelajaran.

Pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

1. According to the text, what is bullying?
2. What actions are considered bullying?
3. How many types of bullying are there? What are they?
4. Which type of bullying includes kicking and punching?
5. What does a bully do in verbal bullying?

Jawaban:

1. Bullying is behavior that focuses on making a person feel inadequate or belittling the bullied.
2. Actions which are considered bullying are harassment, physical harm, repeatedly demeaning speech and efforts to ostracize another person.
3. There are three types of bullying. They are physical, verbal and emotional bullying.
4. Kicking and punching are physical bullying.
5. He/she teases the bullied excessively, using demeaning languages.



### TASK 4

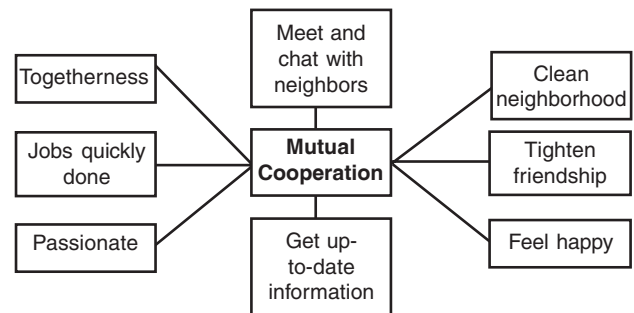
Work in groups of four.  
Discuss and write as many words connected to mutual cooperation as you can.

#### Petunjuk Guru

Kegiatan ini bertujuan meningkatkan keterampilan dan keberanian peserta didik mengungkapkan pendapat mereka menggunakan bahasa Inggris.

1. Peserta didik diminta membuat kelompok yang terdiri atas empat orang. Mereka sebaiknya berkelompok dengan teman-teman yang duduknya berjauhan.
2. Setiap kelompok diminta menuliskan kata-kata atau frasa-frasa yang berkaitan dengan kerja bakti atau gotong royong. Setiap anggota kelompok sebaiknya dimintai pendapat.
3. Setelah selesai, setiap kelompok diminta membacakan hasilnya. Kelompok lain diminta menulis kata-kata atau frasa-frasa dari kelompok lain yang belum mereka tulis.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan.

Contoh jawaban:





### TASK 5

Read the words and find their meanings.  
You will read the words in the text in TASK 6.

**Jawaban:**

- |                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. daerah pinggiran kota | 2. daerah pedesaan               |
| 3. terkenal              | 4. keikhlasan                    |
| 5. kemanusiaan           | 6. asli                          |
| 7. meraih                | 8. saling membagi, tukar-menukar |
| 9. kewajiban             | 10. ciri, tanda                  |
| 11. warisan budaya       | 12. dilestarikan                 |
| 13. menjaga              | 14. bekerja/berusaha keras       |
| 15. jaminan              | 16. bubar, berpencar             |
| 17. memperteguh          | 18. terlibat                     |
| 19. permintaan           | 20. imbalan nyata                |



### TASK 6

Read the text and answer the questions that follow, orally.

**Petunjuk Guru**

1. Peserta didik diminta membaca teks berikut dalam hati.
2. Selanjutnya, beberapa peserta didik diminta membaca teks tersebut secara bergiliran dengan suara nyaring dan dengan pelafalan yang benar. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi contoh pengucapan yang benar jika ada peserta didik yang masih mengucapkan kata-kata dengan pelafalan yang kurang tepat.
3. Setelah itu, peserta didik menjawab pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang ada secara lisan dan bergiliran. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan membetulkan jawaban temannya yang dirasa kurang tepat.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai dan balikan, serta memotivasi peserta didik agar terus aktif dalam kegiatan pembelajaran.

**Jawaban:**

1. It describes a social phenomenon, i.e. mutual cooperation, in general.
2. People in suburban and rural areas practice mutual cooperation until now.
3. The basis of mutual cooperation is sincerity and humanity.
4. No, they don't. Because in essence, people should help each other.
5. They practice mutual cooperation on many occasions, such as at jobs relating to agriculture and celebrations.
6. It is the essence of mutual cooperation.
7. Because it is a familiarity of Indonesian culture.
8.
  1. Man is not alone in this world but surrounded by groups, society and the universe.
  2. In fact, man is dependent on other people, in all aspects of life.
  3. Therefore, man should always do his best to maintain good relationship with others, motivated by the same spirit (equality).
  4. Man should always strive to adapt with his community, to do the same in the spirit of equality.
9. A person should send sufficient notice to community members about activities and the execution time.
10. The job becomes easier and lighter than if it is done individually, it reinforces and strengthens the relationships among community members and it unites all community members who are involved in it.



### Variasi

Find the meanings and synonyms of the following words in the text in TASK 6.

Memorize the words.

**Petunjuk Guru**

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru menggandakan tabel soal kosakata berikut sebanyak peserta didik. Namun, Bapak/Ibu Guru juga dapat meminta peserta didik membuat tabel kosakata berikut dan kemudian mendiktekan kosakatanya.
2. Peserta didik melengkapi tabel dan kemudian membacakan hasilnya secara sukarela dengan tunjuk jari.
3. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak jawaban temannya dan membetulkan jawaban mereka jika kurang tepat.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai terutama kepada para peserta didik yang aktif dan memotivasi semua peserta didik agar selalu aktif dalam setiap pembelajaran.

No.	Word	Meaning	Synonym
1.	realize	_____	_____
2.	salary	_____	_____
3.	draw in	_____	_____
4.	reciprocal	_____	_____
5.	desire	_____	_____
6.	society	_____	_____
7.	attitude	_____	_____
8.	original	_____	_____

**Jawaban:**

No.	Word	Meaning	Synonym
1.	realize	mewujudkan	achieve
2.	salary	gaji, upah	wage
3.	draw in	terlibat	involve
4.	reciprocal	timbal-balik	mutual
5.	desire	tuntutan	demand
6.	society	masyarakat	community
7.	attitude	tingkah laku, tindakan	behavior
8.	original	asli	indigenous



### TASK 7

Read the text and identify the sentences with gerunds.  
Underline the gerunds.

**Jawaban:**

1. Many people consider fishing a good hobby and worth trying.
2. They spend hours fishing at the bank of a river or lake.
3. Some say, waiting for a catch is boring, but not for them.
4. They stay calm hours by watching the rod if it moves, ....
5. However, they keep casting the line and hoping that a fish will take the bait.
6. Although after spending much time without catching any fish, they remain happy.



## TASK 8

Read the text aloud, in turns.

Then, listen to and answer the questions.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik diminta membaca dalam hati teks berikut sambil menggarisbawahi kosakata baru.
2. Selanjutnya, beberapa peserta didik diminta membaca teks tersebut secara bergiliran dengan suara nyaring dan dengan pelafalan yang benar. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi contoh pengucapan yang benar jika ada peserta didik yang masih mengucapkan kata-kata dengan pelafalan yang kurang tepat.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik bersama-sama mencari arti kosakata baru yang telah digarisbawahi. Beberapa peserta didik yang sudah mengetahui makna kosakata yang digarisbawahi oleh temannya diminta menyebutkan artinya. Selanjutnya, peserta didik diminta menghafalkannya.
4. Beberapa peserta didik diminta membaca teks dengan suara nyaring, pelafalan dan intonasi yang tepat, secara bergiliran.
5. Setelah itu, Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan pertanyaan-pertanyaan bacaan dua kali. Peserta didik diminta menyimak dan menjawabnya secara lisan dan bergiliran. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan membetulkan jawaban temannya yang dirasa kurang tepat.
6. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai dan balikan, serta memotivasi peserta didik agar terus aktif dalam kegiatan pembelajaran.

### Pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

1. What is the text about?
2. What do the cultures stress?
3. What countries perform these cultures?
4. What common trait is important in these cultures?
5. What are good people according to the cultures?

### Jawaban:

1. It is about collectivistic cultures.
2. They stress the needs and goals of the group as a whole over the needs and wishes of individuals.
3. Asia, Central America, South America and Africa are examples of countries with collectivistic cultures.
4. Working as a group and supporting others is important/essential.
5. According to the cultures, good people are people who are generous, helpful, dependable and attentive to the needs of others.



## TASK 9

Listen to the monolog and answer the following questions.

### Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru: Indepreneur!

Have you ever heard the term "indepreneur"? What do you know?

"Indepreneur" is a combination of two words: independent and entrepreneur. Indepreneur means people who manage businesses independently, where people run businesses alone and these people have been invading Indonesia recently.

Before talking about indepeneur any further, let's see an example of a successful indepeneur; she is Sacha Stevenson, a Canadian female who is fluent in Bahasa Indonesia and has acted a parody on Youtube entitled "How to Act Indonesian". The parody is quite funny, but it is considered hurtful towards Indonesian people's feelings. Her creativity has earned her dollars since she installed on Google AdSense ads on videos production. When a user clicks on an ad in the video, from there the source of dollars flow into Sacha's account. The amounts can be quite large, depending on how many visitors watch the video. The more they click, the more Sacha accumulates. What Sacha is doing has become a hot issue in the internet world which is called "Indepreneur". So, what is indepeneur?

Indepreneur means a person who manages a business independently, to run and stand totally on its own (self-sufficient). Indepreneur is a combination of employees, capital holders and at the same time the company itself. That's true! Indepreneur is a reality and simultaneously a new opportunity after the birth of the Internet.

It is the Internet that makes nobody into somebody. On the other hand, this type of business has become the enemy of the mainstream giant industry in all fields; movies, music, media, stores, malls and others. Ordinary people who are nobodies with their independent spirit keep trying to become indepeneurs using the flexibility and unique offers of the Internet.

It can be ascertained, indepeneurs are creative people, full of innovation, who see big opportunities on the Internet. They try to run businesses independently from the start, in many cases even without capital. If there is money they have to spend, it is not billions of dollars. Indepeneurs' capital is networking on the Internet by utilizing social media.

Adapted from: <http://goo.gl/c3EvUf> by Pepih Nugraha, a social media activist journalist (June 10, 2015)

### Jawaban:

1. It is about indepeneur.
2. It refers to people who start and run businesses independently (self-sufficient).
3. She created a parody on Youtube entitled "How to Act Indonesian".
4. Because the more people who watch her parody click the ads, the more revenue she gets.
5. It does not need to pay employee wages, buy a business location, or need large capital. It only needs creativity, innovation, opportunity and fast internet connection.



## TASK 10

Listen and complete the text based on what you have heard.

### Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru dan jawaban:

Several weeks ago, I was at Soekarno-Hatta International Airport, waiting in the (1) **departure** lounge F5. There were three young women trying to take pictures with three of them in one frame. They did it in front of me, using mobile phone cameras. As usual, I (2) **volunteered** to take their pictures, so they could all appear in one frame. Shockingly, the reaction I received was (3) **quite** different to what I normally get. The young woman holding the camera phone said, "Thanks, but no (4) **offence** meant. If we don't take our selfie photos, our styles will look (5) **countrified**. You know, selfie is an art, resulting in a style that is different from ordinary photos." Of course, this response made me feel bad and I (6) **apologized** for interrupting their privacy. I was aware that a good intention was not always accepted.

What caught my attention was the use of the term selfie. Obviously, the woman did not use the term selfie appropriately.

Taking pictures of at least two people in one frame via mobile phone camera shots independently is called groofie.

Well, let's forget the woman's response and talk about selfie which is very phenomenal. What is selfie? Selfie itself is an **(7) abbreviation** of self-portrait. Perhaps the Indonesian word for selfie is "swafoto", but it sounds a bit awkward, right? In South Korea selfie is known as "selca", short for "self-camera". So, selfie is taking pictures individually. It could use a manual camera with a "self-timer" feature, a digital camera which is more adaptive to selfie and the most common being a camera phone or smartphone.

The word "selfie" itself first **(8) appeared** in 2002 in an Australia Internet forum named *ABC Online*. Ten years later, *Time Magazine* made selfie one of the "Top 10 Buzzwords". The peak occurred in 2013 when the word "selfie" was incorporated into the *Oxford English Dictionary* and in the same year it was announced as the "Word of the Year" by the dictionary.

Many people agree that selfie is an art. That's why, they do selfie to share. They rarely do selfie and then keep the photos for themselves. They surely share the photos among their friends or families through social networking sites, especially the photography platform, like Instagram, Path, Flickr, MySpace, Facebook or WhatsApp. People who do selfie seldom pose at usual styles. According to them, the more **(9) bizarre** their styles, the more responses they will get, for examples a cone-shaped mouth, eyes flashing flirtatiously, sharp glance, laughter or a serious face. These awkward photos are then shared on social media. These just create merely amusing or fun-calls, because after the photos are distributed, **(10) crowds** rush their comments. The photos owner absolutely feels happy. Selfie sensation!

Adapted from: <http://www.nextren.com/read/2015/06/25/080800931/>  
Selfie.Groofie.Dronie.Lalu.Apa.Lagi. by Pepih Nugraha (June 25, 2015)

10. "... and in the same year it was announced as the 'Word of the Year' by the dictionary." (Paragraph 4)  
What does 'it' refer to?

**Jawaban:**

**TASK 1**

- |                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. ruang tunggu keberangkatan | 2. bersuka rela      |
| 3. secara mengejutkan         | 4. menolak           |
| 5. biasa, lumrah              | 6. menyadari         |
| 7. niat                       | 8. secara jelas      |
| 9. secara mandiri             | 10. potret, gambar   |
| 11. aneh                      | 12. istilah          |
| 13. puncak                    | 14. berpose, bergaya |
| 15. kedepan mata menggoda     |                      |

**TASK 2**

1. It is about selfie.
2. She rejected the offer and told the writer that selfie was an art. They would look countrified, unless they took their own photos.
3. Selfie is taking pictures individually.
4. It is an abbreviation of self-portrait.
5. It appeared for the first time in 2002.
6. It was first appeared in an Australia Internet forum called *ABC Online*.
7. It made selfie one of the "Top 10 Buzzwords".
8. The *Oxford English Dictionary* included the word 'selfie' in 2013.
9. They expect numbers of comments about their photos. Because they make those photos just for amusement or fun-calls.
10. It refers to 'selfie'.



## Variasi

**TASK 1**

Read the words and find their meanings.

- |                                 |   |       |
|---------------------------------|---|-------|
| 1. departure lounge             | = | _____ |
| 2. to volunteer                 | = | _____ |
| 3. shockingly                   | = | _____ |
| 4. to reject                    | = | _____ |
| 5. ordinary                     | = | _____ |
| 6. aware                        | = | _____ |
| 7. intention                    | = | _____ |
| 8. obviously                    | = | _____ |
| 9. independently                | = | _____ |
| 10. portrait                    | = | _____ |
| 11. awkward                     | = | _____ |
| 12. buzzword                    | = | _____ |
| 13. peak                        | = | _____ |
| 14. to pose                     | = | _____ |
| 15. eyes flashing flirtatiously | = | _____ |

**TASK 2**

Answer the questions based on the text in TASK 10, orally.

1. What is the text about?
2. How did the woman at the airport respond to the writer's offer?
3. According to the text, what is selfie?
4. What does selfie stand for?
5. When did the term 'selfie' appear for the first time?
6. At what event did the term 'selfie' appear?
7. How did *Time Magazine* rate the term 'selfie' in 2012?
8. When did the *Oxford English Dictionary* include the word 'selfie'?
9. What do people who share their bizarre photos expect? Why?



## TASK 11

Listen to and write down the sentences.  
Underline the gerunds.

**Kalimat-kalimat yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

1. Yuda practices telling stories in front of his friends in preparation for next week's story telling contest.
2. Many women regretted buying their needs in that supermarket, because the prices were higher than other supermarkets.
3. Bayu leaves the room without saying anything to his friends.
4. I can't imagine my father wearing a gemstone ring.
5. Playing games on smartphones has become a trend for a few years.
6. Anneke loves spending time alone in her room.
7. If you'd like to improve your speaking skills. You should speak English frequently.
8. The little girl keeps on asking where her mother is after her mother passed away two days ago.
9. Yuda and his father are used to fishing on the bank of the river.
10. I'm certain that every student's hobbies are reading and listening to music.

**Jawaban:**

1. Yuda practices telling stories in front of his friends in preparation for next week story telling contest.
2. Many women regretted buying their needs in that supermarket, because the prices were higher than other supermarkets.
3. Bayu leaves the room without saying anything to his friends.
4. I can't imagine my father wearing a gemstone ring.
5. Playing games on smartphones has become a trend for a few years.

- Anneke loves spending time alone in her room.
- If you'd like to improve your speaking skills. You should speak English frequently.
- The little girl keeps on asking where her mother is after her mother passed away two days ago.
- Yuda and his father are used to fishing on the bank of the river.
- I'm certain that every student's hobbies are reading and listening to music.



## TASK 12

Make your own sentences using the gerunds in TASK 11.

### Contoh jawaban:

- Do your parents know the reason why you practiced telling stories for the last three days?
- I don't regret buying this grammar exercise book. It's really helpful.
- Maya saw me without saying a word this morning. Is she angry with me?
- The students can't imagine wearing robes on their graduation.
- Playing games makes young boys lazy and incur health problems. Do you agree?
- Do you love spending your weekends with your friends or families?
- Speaking before an audience is a new experience for me.
- I keep on asking questions about a phenomenon before my curiosity is answered satisfactorily.
- Isn't Jojo used to fishing with you during holidays?
- Reading and listening to music are very interesting activities.



## Variasi

Complete the sentences with the suitable gerunds from the box.

Read the sentences aloud.

- |              |              |                   |
|--------------|--------------|-------------------|
| a. using     | b. spending  | c. smoking        |
| d. exciting  | e. hearing   | f. working        |
| g. laughing  | h. calling   | i. clapping hands |
| j. reading   | k. seeing    | l. running        |
| m. taking    | n. waiting   | o. tapping        |
| p. utilizing | q. eating    | r. studying       |
| s. swimming  | t. borrowing | u. cycling        |
| v. living    | w. creating  | x. updating       |

- People realize that \_\_\_\_\_ is one of the deadliest habits in the world.
- Reni and Adien look forward to \_\_\_\_\_ from their cousin who lives in Denmark.
- Anneke wants to know whether Bayu is on his way or still at home, by \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- Finally, Tyas admitted \_\_\_\_\_ my laptop computer.
- Don't worry. You may borrow this sensational book after I have finished \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- I can't stand \_\_\_\_\_ together with Nino because he is slow and lazy.
- Hiking or trekking is a tiring activity, but it is very \_\_\_\_\_.
- My grandmother recalled \_\_\_\_\_ a plane for the first time when she was ten.
- My brother suggested \_\_\_\_\_ the long holiday in my uncle's hometown, Palembang.

- \_\_\_\_\_ makes us look younger, doesn't it?
- Bayu and Yuda enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ every Sunday morning at Indah Swimming Pool.
- I heard your brother has stopped \_\_\_\_\_ junk food. Is that right?
- We have to live humbly as my parents try hard to avoid \_\_\_\_\_ money from their offices.
- Princess Arora can't imagine \_\_\_\_\_ in a small house.
- One of secretary's duties is \_\_\_\_\_ meeting notes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is my favorite sport.
- Many vocational school students majoring in technology take part in \_\_\_\_\_ electric cars.
- Although my brother has never learned IT, he understands \_\_\_\_\_ cyberspace very well.
- Nowadays, teenagers never miss \_\_\_\_\_ information from their mobile phones.
- In spite of \_\_\_\_\_ idly in the departure lounge, Monalisa is writing what she sees there.

### Jawaban:

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c  | 2. e  | 3. h  | 4. a  | 5. j  |
| 6. f  | 7. d  | 8. k  | 9. b  | 10. g |
| 11. s | 12. q | 13. t | 14. v | 15. m |
| 16. u | 17. w | 18. p | 19. x | 20. n |



## TASK 13

Read the text and complete the statements that follow.

### Jawaban:

- describe a certain social phenomenon
- women
- each member contributes a certain amount of money
- continue paying up until the end, or until all members receive the money that they are entitled to
- share news, hot issues, tips or even family problems



## TASK 14

In pairs, ask and answer questions about the text in TASK 13.

### Contoh jawaban:

- You : Let's make a toss to decide who will start asking questions.  
Your friend : O.K. One, two, three ... Great! I win!  
You : Please ask. Each of us asks two questions in each round.  
Your friend : Well, what is the text about?  
You : It's about a regular social gathering.  
Your friend : That's right. The second question is who are usually involved in the activity?  
You : Women!  
Your friend : Good! Your turn, please.  
You : How often is the activity usually held?  
Your friend : It is usually held once a month.  
You : Correct! Well, what do the people involved in the activity do?  
Your friend : First, each member collects money and the lucky draw is done to decide who will receive the money. Then, the members share news, tips or discuss their problems.  
You : Excellent!



### TASK 15

Find a report text about a social phenomenon.  
Rewrite the text using your own words.  
Share your work with class.

**Contoh jawaban:**

As time passes and the more sophisticated technology gets, the work normally done manually is predicted to be replaced. According to the analysis of *Glassdoor*, a job seekers community site, automation will increase dramatically in the coming 2033 year. At that time, *Glassdoor* claims that as much as 47 percent of the current jobs will be taken over by the engine power, such as cashier and teller.

There are several types of jobs with low skills that will be easily replaced by engine power, but not jobs that require high creativity or social skills. Let's see the example of jobs that will be easily replaced by engine power.

1. Bank Teller  
The role of the bank tellers has already been replaced by automated teller machine (ATM). Currently, bank customers withdraw cash, transfer funds, pay bills and buy credits through ATM machines. Besides, through a special machine, customers can also deposit cash into the account.
2. Cashier  
Many large stores in the US and other Western countries have been provided with a special machine for self-service customers. Later, customers can scan and make payments independently through the machine. Until now, the standalone or automatic machine is known to have totaled 430,000 units worldwide, up to four times as much than in 2008.
3. Telephone operators  
Automatic answering machines have replaced the role of telephone operators.
4. The postman  
The role of the current physical form of the letter has been replaced by e-mail or electronic mail. In addition to more efficient, no postage stamps, paper, etc., e-mail can be sent in a matter of seconds. We hardly see a postman delivering letters in our neighborhood.
5. The travel agent (travel agent)  
A few years ago, customers had to go to a travel agent to book a plane ticket. However, now customers can do it themselves through airlines' or travel service websites. In addition to being more practical, customers can decide for themselves, which is the most inexpensive ticket.

Adopted from: <http://goo.gl/tEsk2v> (June 19, 2015)



### TASK 16

Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. D   2. B   3. A   4. C   5. E



### TASK 17

Complete the text with the correct words from the box.

**Jawaban:**

1. d   2. g   3. b   4. e   5. a



### TASK 19

Read the song lyrics.  
What is the message of the song?

**Contoh jawaban:**

The message of the song is that it is important for us to keep a person who lost his/her way and fell down safe because it's hard to find a way to get through.



### Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. A   2. D   3. B   4. E   5. E  
6. C   7. A   8. B   9. E   10. C

B. Make five sentences using gerunds.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. Unconsciously, playing online games is light-headed.
2. We must keep on trying until we achieve what we wish for.
3. We can make many friends by joining extracurricular activities.
4. My brother and I are used to cycling during weekends.
5. Sending letters to friends or relatives by post is not common to do recently.

# Final Test

## LISTENING SECTION

### PART I

1. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : What will you do if you have a lot of money?  
Boy : I will donate my money to many orphanages and visit European countries.  
Girl : You're really generous. You always think of other people.  
Boy : Thanks.  
**Narrator :** What will the boy do if he has a lot of money?

Jawaban: A

2. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : You should not decide the material for the writing assignment by yourself. We have to discuss it with our group members.  
Boy : I know that, but they haven't arrived yet. We have been waiting for half an hour, but no one has showed up.  
Girl : I think we should wait for them for another ten minutes.  
**Narrator :** What does the girl suggest?

Jawaban: D

3. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : You look so happy, Dad. Don't you want to share the good news with me?  
Man : I want to, but let's meet your mom. Where is she?  
Girl : She's knitting in the living room.  
Man : I can't wait to tell you both about this good news.  
Girl : You make me curious, Dad. Please tell me a bit.  
Man : You know what! I received a bonus!  
Girl : What news!  
**Narrator :** What is the surprise?

Jawaban: C

4. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : What's wrong with you? You look so worried.  
Boy : Yes, I do. You know, I forgot doing the science homework.  
Girl : What? You must check the schedule every day, so you won't miss anything.  
Boy : I know, it's my fault. What should I do now?  
Girl : You should do it right away. You still have time.  
**Narrator :** What should the boy do?

Jawaban: A

### PART II

5. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

- Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Boy : I've got a terrible headache.  
Girl : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator :** What will the girl most likely reply?  
A. You have to be independent.  
B. You must go to the clinic to get medicine.  
C. I will help you do the assignment.  
D. You have to leave early tomorrow.

Jawaban: B

6. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

- Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : Oh, I feel so nervous. I don't think I can do the test.  
Boy : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator :** What is the best response?  
A. You got a perfect score on the last test.  
B. To have a study club is a good thing.  
C. Listen! You're smart. You just need self-confidence.  
D. I will have a trip to Lombok next month.

Jawaban: C

7. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

- Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : I found a wallet full of money and important documents.  
Boy : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator :** What will the boy probably reply with?  
A. I don't know what it is.  
B. You have to return it to the owner.  
C. In my opinion, you'd better repost the letter.  
D. If I were you, I would tell the principal about the proposal.

Jawaban: B

### PART III

8. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : If you arrive at the bamboo bridge, please turn left. Tanti's house is at the corner of the second T-junction.  
Boy : Thank you very much.  
Girl : You're welcome.  
**Narrator :** Which picture shows what the boy should do after passing the bridge?

Jawaban: C

9. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 Girl : Listen, everybody. For the biology class, we'll go to Sea World next Sunday and observe the sea creatures.  
 Boy : Wow, that's great! It would be interesting.  
 Narrator : Which picture shows where the girl and her friends will go?

**Jawaban: D**

10. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 Talking about dinosaurs, we always refer to T-rex, the most deadly reptiles during its era. In fact, there were many giants reptiles bigger than T-rex, but they were less famous than that beast, such as brontosaurus, diplodocus and brachiosaurus. Are you familiar with those creatures? Let's learn about one of them.  
 The name Diplodocus comes from the Greek language which means 'double beam'. This refers to strangely shaped bones found in the Diplodocus' tail. A large amount of fossil remains have made it easier for scientists to study the Diplodocus compared to many other dinosaurs.  
 Diplodocus lived in an area that is now western North America at the end of the Jurassic Period, around 150 million years ago. Research suggests the Diplodocus could have been as long as 35m and around 10 to 15 tons in weight. It had a long tail which contained around 80 vertebrae. Early research suggested it might have swum in water, but more recent studies have indicated that water pressure on the chest would have made it too difficult for this reptile to breathe out of its nostrils.  
 Adopted from: <http://www.sciencekids.co.nz/sciencefacts/dinosaurs/diplodocus.html> (June 20, 2015)

**Narrator :** Which picture matches the monolog?

**Jawaban: A**

11. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 During wet season, we often hear about natural disasters, such as hurricanes or typhoons, tornadoes, landslides, mudslides and floods. This time, you will learn about hurricanes.  
 Like tornadoes, typhoons and hurricanes happen when warm air mixes with cold air, creating intense wind, rain and flooding. Typhoons and hurricanes are the same type of storms, but they happen in different places. Typhoons occur in the Pacific Ocean around Hawaii and Asia. Hurricanes occur on the eastern seaboard along the United States and Central America.  
 Hurricanes can reach 600 miles wide. They move slowly over the ocean, gaining power and speed. When they hit land, they can cause flooding and destroy buildings and cars. Hurricane winds can blow up to 200 miles per hour. In the center of a hurricane is the eye of the storm. In this area, the weather is calm. Hurricanes can last more than a week, making them very destructive.  
 Adopted from: <http://easyscienceforkids.com/all-about-typhoons-and-hurricanes/> (June 20, 2015)

**Narrator :** Which picture matches the monolog?

**Jawaban: E**

**PART IV**

**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Questions 12 and 13 refer to the following monolog.**

Let's learn about owls, mice's natural enemies. Owls are nocturnal and hunt by night, unlike most other hunting birds.

There are two families of owl—barn owls and typical owls. There are 135 species of typical owls, including the great horned owl. There are 10 species of barn owls. The common barn owl is the most widespread—it is found on every continent but Antarctica.

Owls have a varied diet. Small owls eat mostly insects. Bigger owls eat mice and shrews. Eagle owls can catch young deer. In the country, the tawny owl's diet is 900 small mammals, but many now live in towns where their diet is mainly small birds, such as sparrow and starlings.

Owls have a typical characteristic. They have huge eyes that allow them to see in almost pitch darkness. Most birds' eyes look to the sides, but an owl's look straight forward like a human's. An owl's hearing is very sensitive. It is four times as sharp as a cat's. Owls can pinpoint sounds with astonishing accuracy from the slight difference in sound levels it receives in each of its ears. In addition, the flight feathers of an owl's wings muffle the sound of the bird's wingbeat so that it can swoop almost silently down to its prey.

Adopted from: John Farndon, *1000 Things You Should Know about Wild Animals*, Essex, Miles Kelly Publishing Ltd, 2000.

**Narrator:**

12. What does the monolog describe?  
 13. What are the eyes of the bird like?

12. **Jawaban: E**

13. **Jawaban: B**

**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Questions 14 and 15 refer to the following monolog.**

All over the world, people live by buying and selling all kinds of goods, from toys and clothes to furniture and cars.

There are many people involved in the buying and selling. People who supply goods to stores are called wholesalers. People who supply goods to the public from stores, supermarkets, convenience stores or markets are called retailers.

Adopted from: Djatmika and Didik Hari Pambudi, *Developing English Skill Writing Report Texts*, Bandung: Pakar Raya, 2013.

**Narrator:**

14. What is the best title for the text?  
 15. What are wholesalers?

14. **Jawaban: A**

15. **Jawaban: A**

**This is the end of the listening section.**

**READING SECTION**

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 16. C | 31. A | 46. C |
| 17. D | 32. D | 47. A |
| 18. D | 33. A | 48. C |
| 19. B | 34. C | 49. A |
| 20. C | 35. B | 50. D |
| 21. A | 36. A |       |
| 22. A | 37. D |       |
| 23. E | 38. E |       |
| 24. E | 39. A |       |
| 25. B | 40. D |       |
| 26. B | 41. D |       |
| 27. A | 42. A |       |
| 28. C | 43. E |       |
| 29. D | 44. C |       |
| 30. C | 45. B |       |



# UNIT IX

## Know Our Arts and Handicrafts

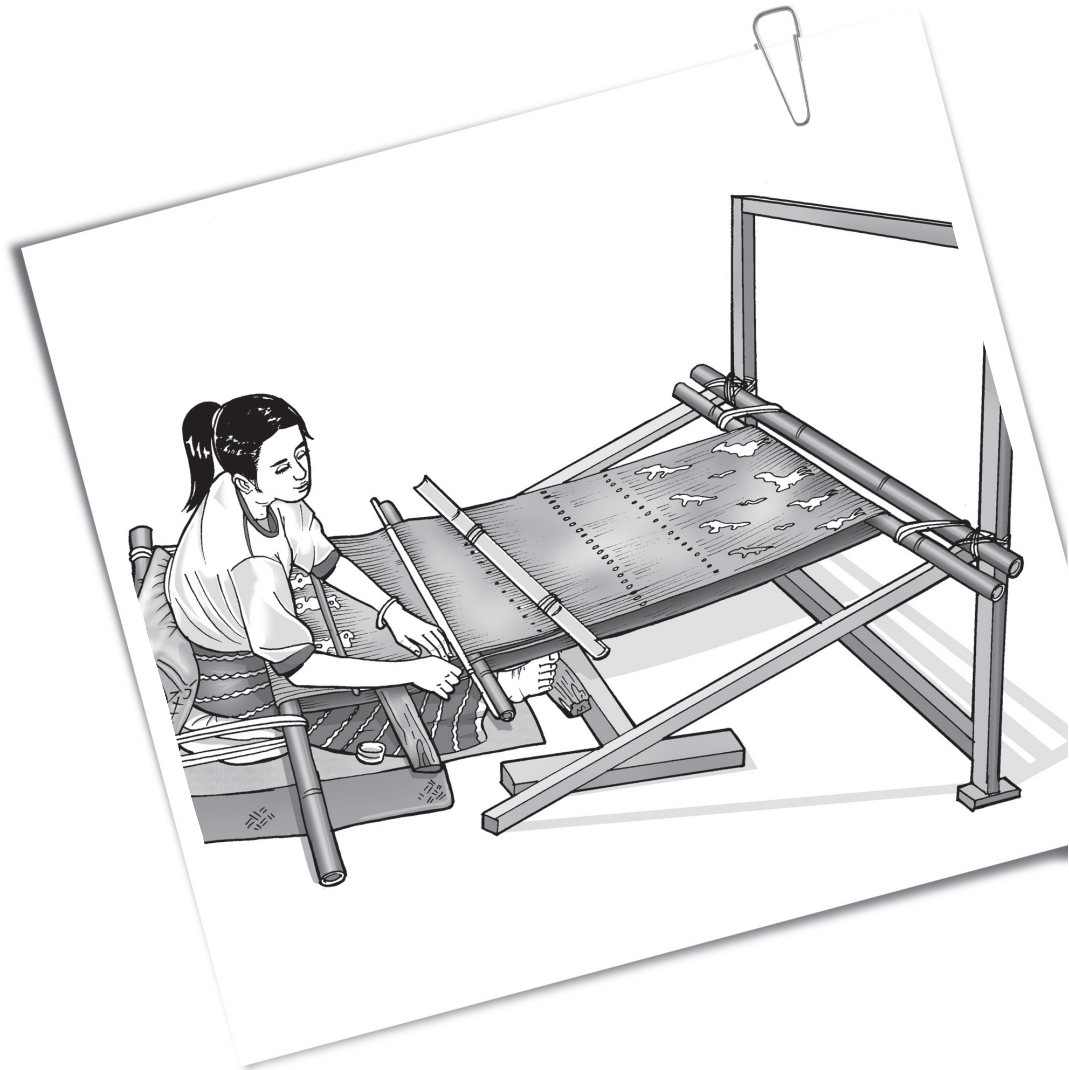
### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. identify the social function, structure and linguistic features used in report texts about objects (arts and handicrafts),
  - b. write report texts about objects (arts and handicrafts),
  - c. use present tense and past tense.
2. be able to:
  - a. identify the social function, structure and linguistic features used in report texts about objects (arts and handicrafts),
  - b. write report texts about objects (arts and handicrafts),
  - c. use present tense and past tense.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be honest, disciplined, confident and responsible in communicating with others.



Look at the picture. Do you know what the woman is doing? Yeah, she is weaving 'ikat', a traditional cloth. Indonesia is rich of arts and handicrafts.

In this unit you will learn about report texts, especially about objects (arts and handicrafts).



## TASK 1

Let's play a guessing game.  
Follow the instructions.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membentuk kelompok yang terdiri atas empat orang dan memahami perintah kegiatan.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi waktu kepada peserta didik untuk melakukan permainan ini. Selama peserta didik bermain tebak-tebakan, Bapak/Ibu Guru berkeliling dan memotivasi peserta didik yang kurang aktif agar aktif berkomunikasi. Bapak/Ibu Guru juga membantu peserta didik yang masih mengalami kesulitan dalam menggunakan bahasa Inggris.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan atas kegiatan yang telah dilakukan peserta didik.

### Contoh jawaban:

Student A : Guess it, please.  
 Student B : Is it a craft?  
 Student A : Yes, it is.  
 Student C : Is it handmade?  
 Student A : Yes, it is.  
 Student D : Is it a kind of cloth?  
 Student A : Yes, it is.  
 Student B : Is it painting cloth using wax?  
 Student A : No, it isn't. It is woven.  
 Student C : Is it traditional cloth from Lombok?  
 Student A : No, it isn't. It is from Sumatra.  
 Student D : Is it originated from Batak?  
 Student A : Yes, it is.  
 Student D : I see. Is it *ulos*?  
 Student A : You are right. Now, it's your turn.  
 Student D : Okay. Now guess it.  
 Student B : Is it a traditional cloth?  
 Student D : No, it isn't.  
 Student C : Is it handmade craft?  
 Student D : Yes, it is.  
 Student A : Is it from hard material?  
 Student D : No, it isn't.  
 Student B : Is it from natural fiber?  
 Student D : Yes, it is. It is also made from leaves.  
 Student C : Is it used to carry items?  
 Student D : Yes, it is.  
 Student A : Is it a traditional bag?  
 Student D : Yes, it is.  
 Student B : I guess it is *noken* from Papua.  
 Student D : You are right.  
 Student B : It is my turn.  
 Student A : Is it handmade craft?  
 Student B : Yes, it is.  
 Student C : Is it made from hard material?  
 Student B : Yes, it is.  
 Student D : Is it made of wood?  
 Student B : Yes, it is.  
 Student A : Is it carved?  
 Student B : Yes, it is.  
 Student C : Is it for decoration?  
 Student B : No, it isn't.  
 Student D : Is it for saving items?  
 Student B : No, it isn't.  
 Student A : Is it played?  
 Student B : Yes it is.  
 Student C : Is it like a doll?  
 Student B : Yes, it is.

Student C : I see. Is it *wayang golek*?  
 Student B : That's right. Now, your turn.  
 Student C : Well, guess it, please.  
 Student A : Is it a craft?  
 Student C : No, it isn't.  
 Student B : Is it an art?  
 Student C : Yes, it is.  
 Student D : Is it a traditional dance?  
 Student C : No, it isn't.  
 Student A : Is it a traditional music?  
 Student C : Yes, it is.  
 Student B : Does it consist of several instruments?  
 Student C : No, it is not. It is single instrument, but it has several tones.  
 Student D : Is it made of wood?  
 Student C : Yes, it is. It is made from light but solid wood.  
 Student A : Is it struck to play it?  
 Student C : Yes, it is.  
 Student A : I guess it is *kolintang*.  
 Student C : You're right.



## TASK 3

Listen and repeat.

What are the meanings of the following words?

### Jawaban:

1. mengukur
2. kepulauan
3. jeruji
4. suku
5. khusus, khas
6. aneh
7. menggambarkan
8. kayu hitam
9. asli, pribumi
10. perkebunan



## TASK 4

Find the synonyms of the following words in the text in TASK 2.

What are their meanings?

Read and memorize the words.

### Jawaban:

Word	Synonym	Meaning
1. to lacquer (v)	to gild	menyepuh
2. olden (adj)	ancient	kuno
3. famous (adj)	popular	terkenal
4. to evolve (v)	to develop	berkembang
5. promptly (adv)	immediately	dengan segera
6. certain (adj)	particular	tertentu
7. primal (adj)	primitive	primitif
8. mainly (adv)	primarily	terutama
9. timber (n)	wood	kayu
10. to plant (v)	to cultivate	membudidayakan



## TASK 5

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 2.

### Jawaban:

1. Wood carving is an art of carving statues, ornaments, furniture and utensils from wood, using cutting tools, drills and abrasives.
2. Carvings may be painted or gilded directly on the surface or over a layer of cloth or plaster, or the wood may be left in its natural state and polished.
3. Jepara lattice-like three-dimensional reliefs.
4. In Bali.
5. Carvings of totem poles, weapons, figures and utensils.
6. Masks.
7. Types of wood used.
8. Ebony, teak, mahogany, ironwood, sandalwood and other lesser known indigenous wood.



## TASK 7

In pairs, ask and answer questions based on the text in TASK 6. Do it in turns.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami kembali teks di TASK 6.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik bekerja berpasangan dan setiap pasangan peserta didik bertanya jawab tentang isi teks tersebut. Selama kegiatan tanya jawab berlangsung, Bapak/Ibu Guru berkeliling mengawasi peserta didik. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengoreksi pelafalan peserta didik yang masih kurang tepat.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik agar aktif bertanya jawab.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik tunjuk jari dan ke depan melakukan tanya jawab.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai kepada peserta didik yang berani ke depan dan melakukan tanya jawab.

### Contoh jawaban:

- You : *Batik* is popular worldwide. What is *batik* made of?
- Your friend : *Batik* is made of painting wax on cloth and dyed. What can *batik* be made into?
- You : *Batik* can be made into garments, paintings, scarves, bags, table-cloths, bedspreads, curtains and other decorative items. What does the word *batik* mean?
- Your friend : The word '*batik*' has been translated meaning 'to dot' or 'wax writing' or 'drawing with a broken line'. Where was *batik* found 2000 years ago?
- You : *Batik* was found in the Middle East, Egypt, Peru, Japan, East Turkistan, Europe, as well as Central Asia (India and China) 2000 years ago. How was *batik's* development in Indonesia?
- Your friend : *Batik* reached its highest artistic expression in Indonesia. When was *batik* introduced to Europe?
- You : In the 17th century. You know, *batik* has become traditional cloth in Java. When do people wear it?
- Your friend : They wear it at traditional festivals and specific religious ceremonies. How many patterns of *batik* are there?
- You : There are more than 3,000 patterns of *batik*.
- Your friend : That's right. How many categories of *batik* designs?
- You : Two designs.
- Your friend : Right. What are they?
- You : They are geometric motifs which tend to be the earlier designs and free form designs which are based on stylized patterns of natural forms or imitations of a woven texture.
- Your friend : Yes. Now, please ask me a question.
- You : How is the design of *batik* from Central Java?
- Your friend : It is influenced by traditional patterns and colors.
- You : How about the design of *batik* from the north coast of Java?
- Your friend : It is greatly influenced by Chinese culture and effect brighter colors and more intricate flower and cloud designs.



## TASK 8

Identify the structure of the text in TASK 6.

Jawaban:

Title	Batik
General Classification	<i>Batik</i> is an art and a handicraft which has become more popular in the world, as a wonderfully creative medium. It is an art of painting cloth using wax and dye. This painting uses the <i>canting</i> technique. <i>Batik</i> can be made into garments, paintings, scarves, bags, table-cloths, bedspreads, curtains and other decorative items.
Descriptions	<i>Batik's</i> true origin is still a mystery. The word ' <i>batik</i> ' has been translated, meaning 'to dot' or 'wax writing' or 'drawing with a broken line'. Early <i>batik</i> was found in the Middle East, Egypt, Peru, Japan, East Turkistan, Europe, as well as Central Asia (India and China) 2000 years ago. <i>Batik</i> reached its highest artistic expression in Southeast Asia, particularly in Indonesia. <i>Batik</i> was first introduced to Europe in the 17th century when the Dutch, who colonized Java, Indonesia, introduced this art form to that part of the world. <i>Batik</i> has reached the greatest development in Indonesia, especially in Java, and become traditional cloth. Several of the finest <i>batik</i> cloth is still made in Indonesia. There are more than 3,000 recorded patterns of <i>batik</i> where several patterns have endured unchanged for centuries. <i>Batik</i> designs have traditionally been associated with traditional festivals and specific religious ceremonies. In general, there are two categories of <i>batik</i> design: geometric motifs which tend to be the earlier designs and free form designs which are based on stylized patterns of natural forms or imitations of a woven texture. Certain areas are known for a predominance of certain designs. Central Javanese designs are influenced by traditional patterns and colors. <i>Batik</i> from the north coast of Java, near Pekalongan and Cirebon, have been greatly influenced by Chinese culture and effect brighter colors and more intricate flower and cloud designs.
Closing	<i>Batik</i> has become a highly accomplished and unique work of art.



## TASK 9

Write sentences using present tense and past tense in the text in TASK 6.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca kembali teks di TASK 6.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menulis kalimat yang menggunakan *simple present tense* dan *simple past tense* yang terdapat di dalam teks.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk aktif tunjuk jari menyampaikan kalimat-kalimat tersebut.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberikan nilai dan balikan.

Jawaban:

### Simple Present Tense

1. *Batik* is an art and a handicraft which has become more popular in the world, as a wonderfully creative medium.
2. It is an art of painting cloth using wax and dye.
3. This painting uses the *canting* technique.
4. *Batik's* true origin is still a mystery.
5. Several of the finest *batik* cloth is still made in Indonesia.
6. There are more than 3,000 recorded patterns of *batik* where several patterns have endured unchanged for centuries.

- In general, there are two categories of *batik* design: geometric motifs which tend to be the earlier designs and free form designs which are based on stylized patterns of natural forms or imitations of a woven texture.
- Certain areas are known for a predominance of certain designs.
- Central Javanese designs are influenced by traditional patterns and colors.

#### Simple Past Tense

- Early *batik* was found in the Middle East, Egypt, Peru, Japan, East Turkistan, Europe, as well as Central Asia (India and China) 2000 years ago.
- Batik* reached its highest artistic expression in Southeast Asia, particularly in Indonesia.
- Batik* was first introduced to Europe in the 17th century when the Dutch, who colonized Java, Indonesia, introduced this art form to that part of the world.



### TASK 10

Complete the text with the correct words from the box.

#### Jawaban:

1. f   2. b   3. d   4. g  
5. j   6. e   7. h   8. a



### TASK 11

Retell the text in TASK 10 using your own words.

#### Contoh jawaban:

Let me tell you about *angklung*. *Angklung* is a traditional instrument from the western part of Java. It is made from special black bamboo pipes. The bamboo pipes are suspended in a bamboo frame and bound with rattan cords. You know, *angklung* is unique because each instrument has only one specific note. It is easy to play *angklung*, just shake simply to produce the note. Therefore, it should be played by groups of people using one to five sets of *angklung* and the players must collaborate to play melodies. An *angklung* song is usually an accompaniment of other *angklungs*.

For your information, traditional *angklungs* use the pentatonic scale, but in 1938 musician Daeng Soetigna introduced *angklungs* using the diatonic scale. They are known as *angklung padaeng*. Nowadays, *angklung* has developed and can be performed for all genre of music.

Adopted from:

- <http://www.kbriwina.at/about-the-embassy/embassy-activities/angklung/> (July 7, 2015)
- <http://www.unesco.org/culture/ich/R/L/00393> (July 7, 2015)



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 10.

- Where was *angklung* originally developed?
- What does *angklung* look like?
- What makes *angklung* unique?
- How are *angklungs* played?
- When were *angklungs* using the diatonic scale known?

#### TASK 2

Complete the text with the correct words from the box.

- |                |                 |                |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| a. visual      | b. decoration   | c. heights     |
| d. heyday      | e. revive       | f. paint       |
| g. oil content | h. marginalized | i. technique   |
| j. evolved     | k. compete      | l. distinctive |

Glass is a medium that is rarely chosen by painters because the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ is not easy. The process begins with making patterns, then coloring the back of the glass with paint with as little (2) \_\_\_\_\_ as possible. Glass painting provides interesting (3) \_\_\_\_\_ sensations by offering different ways of viewing, so it is often presented as gifts to kings or sultans in Indonesia.

In its development, the art of glass painting is found in areas in Indonesia, such as in the islands of Java and Bali. It has reached great (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in Cirebon, West Java where people can witness how Indonesian glass painting (5) \_\_\_\_\_. There are (6) \_\_\_\_\_ characteristics of glass painting from Cirebon which is called *Cirebonan*. The paintings are *wayang* or shadow puppet characters and Arabic calligraphy.

The art has been known and developed since the 17th century. The (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of glass painting was from 19th until the early 20th century or until the 1950's where every house in Cirebon had at least a glass painting. However, in the era of global competition, glass painting has been increasingly (8) \_\_\_\_\_ by other more modern products. It's hard for glass painting to (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to grab the consumers' attention.

The glass painters held exhibitions and developed Indonesian contemporary art to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the art of glass painting. Glass painting has begun to evolve.

Adopted from: <http://en.voi.co.id/voi-features/7042-the-art-of-glass-painting> (July 13, 2015)

#### TASK 3

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 2.

- Why do the painters rarely choose glass as medium?
- What is the process of painting glass?
- Where has glass painting reached great heights?
- Why does glass painting decrease in the era of global competition?
- What did the painters do to revive glass painting?

#### TASK 4

Retell the text in TASK 2 using your own words.

#### Jawaban:

##### TASK 1

- In the western part of Java.
- It is made from special black bamboo pipes which are suspended in a bamboo frame and bound with rattan cords.
- Each instrument has the sound of only one specific note.
- Angklungs* are played with simply shaking by groups of people using one to five sets of *angklung*.
- In 1938.

##### TASK 2

1. i   2. g   3. a   4. c   5. j  
6. l   7. d   8. h   9. k   10. e

##### TASK 3

- Because the technique of painting is not easy.
- The process begins with making patterns, then coloring the back of the glass with paint with as little as possible oil content.
- In Cirebon, West Java.

- Because glass paintings have been marginalized by other more modern products and hard to grab the consumers' attention.
- They held exhibitions and developed Indonesian contemporary art.

#### TASK 4 (Contoh jawaban)

Do you like painting? What medium have you chosen? Canvas? Yeah, most painters choose canvas as their medium of painting. Now, I will tell you the distinctive painting, glass painting. You know, glass is a medium that is rarely chosen by painters because the technique is not easy. Let me tell you the process, beginning with making patterns, then coloring the back of the glass with paint with as little oil content as possible. The result, the painting shows fascinating visual sensation, so it is often presented as gifts to kings or sultans.

You know, the art of glass painting developed in Java and Bali, especially Cirebon, West Java. In Cirebon, you will see distinctive characteristics of glass painting called *Cirebonan*. The paintings are *wayang* or shadow puppet characters and Arabic calligraphy.

The art has been known and developed since the 17th century, but it has its ups and downs. The heyday was from 19th until the early 20th century or until the 1950's. Every house in Cirebon had at least a glass painting. However, in the era of global competition, glass paintings have been marginalized by other more modern products. It's hard for glass painting to compete, to grab the consumers' attention.

The glass painters tried to revive this art by holding exhibitions. Glass painting has begun to evolve.

Adopted from: <http://en.voi.co.id/voi-features/7042-the-art-of-glass-painting> (July 13, 2015)



#### TASK 12

Listen to the monolog.  
Which picture suits the text?

##### Petunjuk Guru

- Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan monolog berikut dua kali dan peserta didik menyimak. Peserta didik dapat mencatat kata-kata kunci dalam monolog yang mereka simak.
- Peserta didik mengamati gambar-gambar berikut dan memilih gambar yang tepat berdasarkan monolog yang mereka simak.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas jawaban bersama-sama.

#### Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

This beautiful souvenir is one of the eco-friendly products from Kapuas, Central Kalimantan, Indonesia. It is made by utilizing the sap from a *nyatu* that grows in the Borneo jungle.

The typical form of this craft is dragon boat or *Tinggalan* boat which describes the atmosphere of war and also used in the traditional *Tiwah* ceremony which delivers bones of the deceased. In addition to the boat, *nyatu* sap is also formed into replicas of the Dayak warriors.

This craft is made with colorful and intricate details. The unique shapes make this handicraft very suitable as a display or to complement the room decor.

Adopted from: <https://indonesiasouvenirs.wordpress.com/2013/11/28/resin-craft-of-kapuas/> (July 4, 2015)

#### Jawaban:

Picture 3.



#### Variasi

Listen to the monolog in TASK 12 again.  
Answer the following questions based on the monolog, orally.

- Where does *nyatu* craft originated from?
- What is *nyatu* craft made from?
- Where do the materials for *nyatu* craft come from?
- What is the typical form of *nyatu* craft?
- What is the function of *nyatu* craft?

#### Jawaban:

- It is from Kapuas, Central Kalimantan.
- It is made from the sap of *nyatu*.
- They are from the Borneo jungle.
- The typical form of this craft is a dragon or *Tinggalan* boat.
- It is used for souvenirs and displays or room decorations.



#### TASK 13

Practice the following dialog with your friend.



#### Variasi

Complete the statements based on the dialog in TASK 13.

- The differences between *ikat* and *songket* are that \_\_\_\_\_.
- The visitors can buy *ikat* and *songket* from \_\_\_\_\_.
- The first step of weaving *ikat* is \_\_\_\_\_.
- The designer sketches the pattern with \_\_\_\_\_.
- The dye materials are traditionally made from \_\_\_\_\_.
- The dying process takes time because \_\_\_\_\_.
- The last step of weaving is that \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ikat* and *songket* are expensive because \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Jawaban:

- ikat* is weaved with yarn made from cotton while *songket* generally is from gold or silver threads. The motifs are different; *songket* motifs are visible on one side of the fabric, while *ikat* motifs are visible on both sides
- the galleries
- cotton fibre is spun into a yarn and then plied ready for grouping into bundles
- charcoal, yarns are tied with plastic raffia for the desired design
- natural plant sources such as red from morinda root or yellow from cudrania wood
- the steps must be repeated for each color desired of the fabric
- the individual strands of yarn are then put onto the loom, then the weaver begins to weave
- they take long to process



## TASK 14

Work in pairs.

Each of you decides a certain handicraft.

Ask and answer about the handicraft you choose with your partner. Do it in turns.

### Contoh jawaban:

You : Do you know an umbrella handicraft from Juwiring, Klaten, Central Java?

Your friend : No, I don't. Is it used to protect us from the rain?

You : No, it isn't. It is different from common umbrellas. People use the umbrellas for adornment, wedding decorations, traditional rituals or ceremonies.

Your friend : What kinds of traditional rituals or ceremonies are the umbrellas used for?

You : The umbrellas are used in *ngaben* or cremation ceremonies in Bali. The palaces of Surakarta and Yogyakarta also use the umbrellas for several traditional rituals. It is also used for funerals in Java.

Your friend : What is it made of?

You : It is made of bamboo and cement sack paper.

Your friend : Do you know how to make it?

You : Yes, I do. Do you want to know the steps?

Your friend : Sure.

You : First, the paper is cut into three triangles, then it is stuck to the bamboo framework with glue. Then, it is put out in the sun to dry the glue.

Your friend : What is the next step after the glue is dry?

You : Varnish to make shiny appearance and long lasting, then paint it and draw floral design.

Your friend : I see.

You : What kind of handicraft do you know?

Your friend : Silver craft from Kotagede, Yogyakarta.

You : What are the products of silver craft?

Your friend : There are jewelry such as ring, bracelet and necklace; wall decorations and tableware

You : What is the price?

Your friend : It is cheaper than gold, but it has high quality.

You : Is it processed using machine or handmade?

Your friend : Silver craft is either handmade, machine made or cast, but handmade silver is still very dominant.

You : When will the silversmiths use a machine or cast?

Your friend : They use a machine to make chain necklaces and bracelets and when they receive a big order with limited time.

You : I see. Which method do you know?

Your friend : Using machine and cast.

You : Can you tell me the steps?

Your friend : Sure. It's simple, mix 92.5 percent of silver and 7.5 percent of cooper.

You : Why should add cooper?

Your friend : Pure silver is too soft so copper is added for better forming in the design of accessories.

You : I see. What is the next step?

Your friend : Pour in the cast or machine, wait until cool, then sandpaper and hone to smoothen.

Adapted from:

- <http://www.wisatamelayu.com/id/news/7838-Javas-Fading-Paper-Parasols> (July 14, 2015)
- <http://www.tnol.asia/arts-culture/15599-kotagede-silver-craft-high-quality-heritage.html> (July 14, 2015)



## TASK 15

Observe several art or handicraft workshops in your area.

Describe in general characteristics of the workshops.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mengamati beberapa sentra industri kerajinan tangan atau seni di daerah mereka.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mencatat hal-hal penting tentang sentra industri kerajinan tangan atau seni yang mereka amati.
3. Pada pertemuan berikutnya, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menulis hasil pengamatan mereka secara garis besar.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik menyampaikan hasil pengamatannya.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberikan balikan.

### Contoh jawaban:

The pottery workshops at Sitiwinangun apply traditional techniques using hand wheel and open firing process. The products are statuettes, flower pots, water vessels and other rather large-sized pottey products with traditional decorative motifs. The motifs are jasmine, *lompongan* (a type of leaf), *tumpal*, *ruwen* and *cecekan*. The pottery has rather bright reddish color texture. In its developments, Sitiwinangun pottery products are glazed with more modern decorative motifs.



## TASK 16

Write an outline about your observation in TASK 15.

Develop your outline into a factual report.

### Contoh jawaban:

#### Outline

- Title : Sitiwinangun Pottery
- Introductory paragraph : The location of pottery workshop
- Supporting paragraph 1 : The technique to make pottery
- Supporting paragraph 2 : The kind of pottery and the unique characteristics of the pottery
- Concluding paragraph : The development of the pottery

### Factual Report Text:

#### Sitiwinangun Pottery

The famous pottery workshop in West Java is located in Sitiwinangun Village, Klangeran Subdistrict, Cirebon, West Java. The pottery products are well known for its traditional production techniques which apply and simple decorative motifs.

The potters made earthenware by hand wheel and they keep the traditional technique, using paddle and anvil. The clay used is known as monmorolinite which is mixed with bentonite to improve its malleability. The firing process is usually done in the open air and on open ground on top of brick walls with hay-fueled fire. It takes about 45 minutes. The low temperature firing process results the bright color of the pottery.

Sitiwinangun pottery's unique characteristics are its traditional decorative motifs and its rather bright reddish color texture. The motifs are jasmine, *lompongan* (a type of leaf), *tumpal*, *ruwen* and *cecekan*. These motifs are used in traditional ceramics and the earthenware vessels designed for household use. The potters typically make statuettes, flower pots, water vessels and other rather large-sized pottey products. The most distinctive form is *singabarong*, taking the form of a lion with a gaping mouth, menacingly wide-open eyes and a hole in its back. The hole is used to store water.

The pottery-making tradition has developed hundreds of years, but Bonzan R. Setyo, developed the pottery and introduced a glazing technique and brought fresh ideas for designs. Therefore, in its developments, Sitiwinangun pottery products are glazed with more modern decorative motifs.

Adopted from:

- <http://www.kemendag.go.id/files/profil/Pottery.pdf> (July 14, 2015)
- <http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2001/02/17/cultures-come-together-cirebon-ceramics.html> (July 15, 2015)



## TASK 17

Present your work in TASK 16 in class.

### Contoh jawaban:

Do you know famous pottery workshop in West Java? Yeah, it is located in Sitiwinangun Village, Klenganan Subdistrict, Cirebon. The pottery is popular for its traditional production techniques and simple decorative motifs.

Let me tell you the techniques, the potters made earthenware using traditional technique, using paddle and anvil. You know, the material is clay called monmorolinite. It is mixed with bentonite to improve its malleability. The unique is the firing process which is done in the open air and on open ground. The fuel use hay. It takes about 45 minutes with low temperature. The firing process results the bright color of the pottery.

The pottery has unique characteristics with its traditional decorative motifs. The motifs are jasmine, *lompongan* (a type of leaf), *tumpal*, *ruwen* and *cecekan*. The potters typically make statuettes, flower pots, water vessels and other rather large-sized pottey products. For your information, the most distinctive form is *singabarong*. It is the form of a lion with a gaping mouth, wide-open eyes and a hole in its back. The hole is used to store water.

The pottery has been developed by Bonzan R. Setyo. He introduced glazing pottery with more modern decorative motifs.

Adopted from:

- <http://www.kemendag.go.id/files/profil/Pottery.pdf> (July 14, 2015)
- <http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2001/02/17/cultures-come-together-cirebon-ceramics.html> (July 15, 2015)



## TASK 18

Work in groups of four.

Discuss how to develop Indonesia's handicrafts. Present the result of the discussion in class.

### Contoh jawaban:

Handicraft is a business with great potential in improving the economy of Indonesian. Several Indonesia's handicrafts have great improvement and are well-known to the world, but several decline. The government, artisans, businessmen and the society should cooperate to develop it. There are several ways to develop Indonesia's handicrafts to revive and be more famous in the world.

#### The government

1. It should facilitate the artisans and businessmen's handicraft to get fund to improve their business.
2. It provides training for the artisans so they will be more innovative and create better products.
3. It facilitates the export process of handicrafts so the artisans and businessmen' handicraft ease to develop their product to the world.
4. It should restrict handicrafts' import which has the same characteristic with Indonesia's handicrafts.
5. It facilitates the artisans and businessmen's handicrafts to sell the products such as via website.
6. It holds handicraft exhibitions to attract the customers and introduce the handicrafts.

### The artisans and businessmen's handicrafts

1. They should improve their creativity to develop their products to be more interesting, so the products attract international markets.
2. They should understand customers' interest in order to create innovative handicrafts based on the customers' interests.
3. They should make organization of business handicrafts so they can manage well and can share the knowledge and information.
4. They should be active in joining training to develop their skills.
5. They attend national and international handicraft exhibitions.
6. They promote their products actively both online or directly.

### The society

1. They love, buy and use Indonesia's handicrafts.
2. They help promote the handicrafts to public and world.



## TASK 20

Read the song lyrics. What is the message?

### Contoh jawaban:

The message of the song is letting go of your insecurities in order to reach your full potential.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

### Jawaban:

1. D   2. E   3. E   4. B   5. D  
6. A   7. E   8. A   9. C   10. B

B. Write a report text about art or a handicraft.

### Contoh jawaban:

#### Talo Balak

*Talo balak* is a set of traditional musical instrument from Lampung. It is made from bronze-gong chimes played with a strike.

Like Javanese and Balinese *gamelan*, *talo balak* can be played to accompany Lampung dance or played independently as an assemble playing a composition of Lampung traditional music instruments. *Talo balak* assemble can be used to produce dynamic compositions. It ranges from fast and happy to smooth music which can give a feeling of peace when listening to it.

A set of *talo balak* consists of thirteen small kettle-gongs, from low to high pitch (*kulittang*), a headed drum (*gendang*), a pair of *gong* which consists of a large *gong* (*talo*) and a medium *gong* (*tawak-tawak*), a small-medium *gong* (*canang*) and a pair of small cymbals (*rujih*).

Adopted from: <http://io.unila.ac.id/unila-uky/> (July 2, 2015)

# UNIT X

## Learning about People

### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. present and write about factual reports concerning social phenomena, and
  - b. use noun phrases.
2. be able to:
  - a. present and write about factual reports concerning social phenomena, and
  - b. use noun phrases.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be honest, polite, disciplined, responsible and proud of being Indonesians.



Yuda and his family love spending time in a museum because they learn a lot from the artifacts. This time, Yuda is astonished by a picture representing Indonesia. It is very touching. He looks at it for a moment until Mr. Tantowi, his father, taps his shoulder. Yuda explains that he is very grateful for being an Indonesian. He dreams of meeting his brothers and sisters from other parts of the country oneday. He wants to strengthen unity among Indonesians.

In this unit you will learn about Indonesians. Please read and attempt the tasks in this unit thoroughly. Practice your English skills regularly.





### TASK 1

Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

1. **Contoh jawaban:** Yes, I do.
2. **Jawaban:** They are from Lombok, West Nusa Tenggara.
3. **Jawaban:** The men are farmers and the women weave cloth.
4. **Jawaban:** They use wooden beams and interwoven bamboo for the walls.



### TASK 2

Read the words and find their meanings. You will read the words in the text in TASK 3.

**Jawaban:**

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. sering kali               | 2. cukup                |
| 3. sistem kasta              | 4. adat                 |
| 5. berpacaran                | 6. memerlukan           |
| 7. kemegahan                 | 8. seperti daun palem   |
| 9. kawin lari                | 10. calon               |
| 11. menculik                 | 12. tersebar, luas      |
| 13. menghindarkan diri       | 14. biaya               |
| 15. memberi tahu, melaporkan | 16. membayar ganti rugi |
| 17. menukik                  | 18. menunduk            |
| 19. kotoran kerbau           | 20. satu-satunya        |



### TASK 3

Read the text aloud.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik diminta membaca dalam hati.
2. Selanjutnya, beberapa peserta didik diminta membaca teks tersebut secara bergiliran dengan suara nyaring dan dengan pelafalan yang benar. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi contoh pengucapan yang benar jika ada peserta didik yang masih mengucapkan kata-kata dengan pelafalan yang kurang tepat.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan, serta memotivasi peserta didik agar terus aktif dalam kegiatan pembelajaran.



### TASK 4

Answer the questions based on the text in TASK 3.

**Jawaban:**

1. In Lombok, West Nusa Tenggara.
2. In North and West Lombok, there are four castes: the highest being *Datu* for men and *Denek Bini* for women, next *Raden* for men and *Denda* for women, followed by *Buling* and finally *Jajar Karang*. In Central and South Lombok, it's *Lalu* for men and *Baiq* for women, while in East Lombok it's *Lalu* for men and *Lale* for women.

3. After being circumcised.
4. There are three marriage rituals: an arranged marriage, a union between cousins and elopement.
5. The "*sorong serah*" is performed after the bride's dowry and any religious differences are settled.
6. He reports to the Village Chief about his action.
7. To settle on a ransom for the bride (*uang adat*).
8. The roof is made of straw, walls of plaited bamboo and floors uniquely created from clay mixed with buffalo dung, latex and straw ash.
9. It is a narrow door.
10. It refers to the boy.



### Variasi

Find the meanings and synonyms of the following words in the text in TASK 3. Memorize the words.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru menggandakan tabel soal kosakata berikut sejumlah peserta didik. Namun, Bapak/Ibu Guru juga dapat meminta peserta didik membuat tabel kosakata berikut dan kemudian mendiktekan kosakatanya.
2. Peserta didik melengkapi tabel dan kemudian membacakan hasilnya secara sukarela dengan tunjuk jari.
3. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak jawaban temannya dan membetulkan jawaban mereka jika kurang tepat.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai terutama kepada para peserta didik yang aktif dan memotivasi semua peserta didik agar selalu aktif dalam setiap pembelajaran.

No.	Word	Meaning	Synonym
1.	need	_____	_____
2.	problematic	_____	_____
3.	escorted	_____	_____
4.	one and only	_____	_____
5.	combination	_____	_____
6.	significant	_____	_____
7.	avoiding	_____	_____
8.	sufficient	_____	_____
9.	to inform	_____	_____
10.	particularly	_____	_____

**Jawaban:**

No.	Word	Meaning	Synonym
1.	need	memerlukan	require
2.	problematic	rumit, pelik	complicated
3.	escorted	ditemani	accompanied
4.	one and only	satu-satunya	sole
5.	combination	campuran	mixture
6.	significant	sangat penting	fundamental
7.	avoiding	menghindari	eluding
8.	sufficient	cukup	adequate
9.	to inform	memberi tahu	to report
10.	particularly	secara khusus/khas	uniquely



### TASK 5

Read the text in TASK 3 and rewrite ten noun phrases. What do the phrases in Indonesian mean?

Contoh jawaban:

No.	Noun Phrase	Meaning
1.	a Sasak approaching a friend	orang Sasak yang mendekati temannya
2.	a polite and adequate response	tanggapan yang sopan dan cukup
3.	a choice of three rituals	sebuah pilihan dari tiga ritual
4.	a ransom for the bride	uang tebusan untuk pengantin perempuan
5.	a man of lower caste	seorang laki-laki dari kasta yang lebih rendah
6.	a widespread practice	kegiatan yang menyebar
7.	family friction	perpecahan keluarga
8.	the heavy expenses of a wedding ceremony	biaya upacara pernikahan yang besar
9.	shouts and laughter of the guests	teriakan dan tawa para tamu
10.	the girl's parents	orang tua perempuan



### TASK 6

Work in pairs.

Write a noun and elaborate it to make a meaningful noun phrase. Read your work aloud.

Contoh jawaban:

dancer

1. **Article:** a doll
2. **Possessive noun:** Anita's doll
3. **Possessive pronoun:** your doll
4. **Adjective:** a beautiful doll
5. **Participle:** a beautiful wooden doll



### TASK 7

Look at the following pictures.

Discuss what words or phrases come into your mind concerning the pictures.

#### Petunjuk Guru

Kegiatan ini bertujuan menggali pengetahuan peserta didik tentang Tana Toraja berdasarkan gambar-gambar yang ada. Kegiatan ini diharapkan mempermudah peserta didik memahami teks yang akan mereka pelajari pada kegiatan berikutnya.

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru menjelaskan tujuan kegiatan ini.
2. Peserta didik diminta bekerja dalam kelompok yang terdiri atas empat atau lima orang.
3. Peserta didik diminta mengamati gambar-gambar yang ada serta mendiskusikan dan menuliskan kata-kata atau frasa-frasa yang berkaitan dengan gambar-gambar tersebut, misalnya *Tana Toraja, Makassar, corpse, tomb, ancestor, funeral, rocky hill or cliff*.
4. Setiap kelompok diminta menyebutkan kata-kata atau frasa-frasa yang telah mereka tulis. Kelompok lain menuliskan kata-kata atau frasa-frasa yang disampaikan temannya yang belum mereka tulis.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan, misalnya tentang keaktifan peserta didik dalam berdiskusi dan keberanian mereka mengemukakan pendapat, tanpa perlu memberi penilaian.
6. Bapak/Ibu Guru terus memotivasi peserta didik agar selalu aktif dan berani berbahasa Inggris dalam setiap kesempatan.

Contoh jawaban:

1. Tana Toraja from Makassar
2. corpses
3. ancestors' tombs
4. a funeral ceremony
5. a rocky hill or cliff
6. a saddle-shaped roof
7. an ornamented house
8. a fabulous large wooden house



### TASK 8

Read the text aloud, in turns.

Then, listen to and answer the questions.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik diminta membaca dalam hati teks berikut sambil menggarisbawahi kosakata baru.
2. Selanjutnya, beberapa peserta didik diminta membaca teks tersebut secara bergiliran dengan suara nyaring dan pelafalan yang benar. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi contoh pengucapan yang benar jika ada peserta didik yang masih mengucapkan kata-kata dengan pelafalan yang kurang tepat.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik bersama-sama mencari arti kosakata baru yang telah mereka temukan. Beberapa peserta didik yang sudah tahu makna kosakata tersebut diminta menyebutkan artinya. Peserta didik diminta menghafalkannya.
4. Selanjutnya, peserta didik menjawab pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru secara lisan dan bergiliran. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan membetulkan jawaban temannya yang dirasa kurang tepat.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai dan balikan, serta memotivasi peserta didik agar terus aktif dalam kegiatan pembelajaran.

Pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

1. What does the word Toraja mean?
2. According to *Aluk*, how many is cosmos divided into? What are they?
3. Who is *To Minaa*?
4. Why do Toraja people live to an old age?
5. What are the functions of harvest and house warming festivals?

Jawaban:

1. Toraja comes from the Buginese language's *riaja*, meaning "people of the uplands".
2. Cosmos is divided into three; the upper world (heaven), the world of man (earth) and the underworld.
3. *To Minaa* or an *aluk* priest is the earthly authority and whose words actions should be cleaved to both life (agriculture) and death (funerals).
4. It is possibly due to the cool climate and their active lifestyle from infancy to old age.
5. They are times for feasting and gathering of the clans, time to wear their best costumes and jewellery and party for days on end, times for singing and dancing and of course, eating. These are also times for neighbors and clan members to pay their respects and to repay obligations that may date back generations.



## Variasi

What are the meanings of the following words?

### Petunjuk Guru

Kegiatan ini bertujuan memperkaya kosakata peserta didik.

1. Peserta didik diminta bekerja secara kelompok. Setiap kelompok terdiri atas tiga atau empat orang. Sebaiknya setiap kelompok terdiri atas peserta didik yang duduknya berjauhan sehingga mereka bisa berbaur.
2. Setiap anggota kelompok diminta menyiapkan secarik kertas dan alat tulis.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru mendiktekan kosakata berikut dua kali. Peserta didik menyimak dan menuliskannya di kertas yang telah disediakan.
4. Selanjutnya, setiap anggota kelompok mencari arti kosakata tersebut dengan batasan waktu tertentu, misalnya 10 menit. Mereka mendiskusikan artinya bersama-sama. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengamati kegiatan ini.
5. Setelah waktu habis, setiap kelompok diminta membacakan hasilnya secara bergiliran. Setiap anggota kelompok diberi kesempatan membacakan hasilnya. Kelompok lain diminta menyimak dan membetulkan jawaban yang masih kurang tepat.
7. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai.

### Kosakata yang didiktekan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru dan sekaligus artinya:

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. region             | = daerah                    |
| 2. jagged             | = bergerigi                 |
| 3. ridge              | = punggung bukit            |
| 4. indigenous         | = asli, pribumi             |
| 5. to recognize       | = mengakui, menghargai      |
| 6. ancestor           | = nenek moyang              |
| 7. represented        | = digambarkan, diwakili     |
| 8. rectangular        | = persegi panjang           |
| 9. to enclose         | = mengelilingi              |
| 10. should be cleaved | = harus dipatuhi/ditaati    |
| 11. habit             | = kebiasaan                 |
| 12. to govern         | = mengendalikan, memerintah |
| 13. requirement       | = persyaratan               |
| 14. to ruin           | = merusak, menghancurkan    |
| 15. corpse            | = jenazah, mayat            |
| 16. to prohibit       | = melarang                  |
| 17. to allow          | = mengizinkan               |
| 18. to diminish       | = lenyap, musnah            |
| 19. longevity         | = panjang umur              |
| 20. feasting          | = pesta                     |



## TASK 9

Listen and answer the questions based on the text you have heard, orally.

### Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

Balinese are people who live on Bali Island, Indonesia. The Balinese language originated from the Austronesian language group.

In a traditional Balinese village each extended family lives in its own compound, a cluster of buildings enclosed by earthen or stone walls. The shady courtyard is usually divided into three sections, containing rice granaries and cattle sheds; sleeping

quarters and kitchen; and the house temple respectively. The living quarters have clay walls and thatched or palm leaf roofs. Typical villages have temples and an assembly hall, usually centrally located on a public square that also serves as a site for festivals, markets and other community activities.

Balinese life generally centers on the Hindu religion, ancestor cults and local spiritual beliefs. Balinese believe in reincarnation and the dead are cremated in order to liberate their souls for their onward journeys. Caste practices exist, but because most of the population are the lowest caste, there is little formality among the villagers. As in Java, there are different modes of speech to reflect differences in social ranks. High Balinese, for instance, is used for courtly interaction, middle Balinese for level statuses and low Balinese for everyday communication within the village.

Each village is a self-contained community, venerating common ancestors and usually subdivided into cooperative societies whose members assist each other in temple maintenance, festivals and family rites. Family relationships are reckoned through the male line. Marriage is often limited to members of the same *dadia*, or kinship organization. Rice is the main crop and often grown on spectacular irrigated terraces; other crops include yams, sweet potatoes, cassava and corn (maize).

Adopted from: <http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/50243/Balinese> (June 4, 2015)

### Jawaban:

1. To describe the Balinese and their social lives in general.
2. We can see that each extended family lives in its own compound, a cluster of buildings enclosed by earthen or stone walls.
3. They are rice granaries and cattle sheds; sleeping quarters and kitchen; and the house temple.
4. To liberate the dead's souls for their onward journeys.
5. There are three levels of Balinese language. They are high Balinese used for courtly interaction, middle Balinese for level statuses and low Balinese for everyday communication within the village.



## TASK 10

Read the words and find their meanings.

You will listen to the words in the text in TASK 11.

### Jawaban:

1. pulau
2. yang mendominasi
3. pedoman, petunjuk, aturan
4. menyebar
5. orang yang meyakini prinsip bahwa manusia itu berkedudukan sama dan pantas mendapatkan hak dan kesempatan yang sama
6. masyarakat pedesaan
7. berubah, bergeser
8. yang menghargai
9. rakyat jelata
10. rekan



## TASK 11

Listen and complete the text based on what you have heard.

**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru dan jawaban:**

Javanese people live on the island of Java. The Javanese language originated from the Austronesian, or Malayo-Polynesian, language group. Islam is the predominant religion, though Hindu traditions of an earlier era are still **(1) evident** in many areas and relatively few Javanese **(2) strictly** observe Muslim precepts. Belief in **(3) assorted** local spirits is widespread.

Historically, Javanese social organization **(4) varied** in structure from relatively egalitarian rural communities to the highly **(5) stratified** society of the cities, with their complex court lives. These differences found linguistic expressions in **(6) distinct** styles of speech that shifted according to status differences between the speakers. Today the most commonly used styles are *ngoko* (informal), *krama* (polite or deferential) and *madya* (between informal and polite), although there are several others.

The growth of large cities in Java has produced an urban proletariat, mostly of rural origin, who live in makeshift **(7) huts** in enclosed neighborhoods called—like their counterparts in the **(8) countryside**—*kampongs* or villages. Rural Javanese villages are compact groups of single-family houses, traditionally built of bamboo, surrounding a central square. Though rice is the main food crop, a variety of other crops are produced, including corn (maize), **(9) cassava**, peanuts (groundnuts) and soybeans.

A Javanese family is typically **(10) composed of** parents and dependent children, though it may include other close relatives.

Adopted from: <http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/301755/Javanese> (June 4, 2015)



## Variasi

Answer the questions based on the text in TASK 11.

1. What is the text about?
2. What three styles are most commonly used in Javanese language?
3. What is *kampung*?
4. "...though it may include other close relatives." (Last paragraph)  
What does 'it' refer to?
5. "The growth of large cities in Java produces an urban proletariat, ...." (Paragraph 3)  
What is the synonym of the underlined word?

**Jawaban :**

1. It is about Javanese culture.
2. They are *ngoko* (informal), *krama* (polite or deferential) and *madya* (between informal and polite).
3. It is a place where Javanese originally live in huts in enclosed neighborhoods.
4. It refers to the Javanese family.
5. It is common people.



## TASK 12

Listen and write down the sentences you have heard. Underline the noun phrases.

**Kalimat-kalimat yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru dan jawaban:**

1. That man is being ticketed because he doesn't have his driving license with him.
2. I recognize the girl with the pink head scarf.
3. Father is cleaning the windshield.
4. The chair near the window is broken.
5. This dim room displays dioramas.
6. The boy in the batik shirt sings melodiously.
7. We can enjoy the birds singing on trees here.
8. Please call the boys on the benches to enter the classroom now.
9. Mother bought beautiful woven fabrics from Lombok.
10. The girls performing the Pendet dance are very beautiful.



## TASK 13

Make your own sentences using the noun phrases in TASK 12. Read your work aloud, in turns.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. May I see your **driving license**, please?
2. Let's ask the **girl with the pink head scarf** for directions.
3. **The windshield** is dirty.
4. Why do you like sitting on **the chair near the window**?
5. Please don't read in **this dim room**.
6. **The boy in the batik shirt** is my cousin.
7. Uncle Jono is familiar with **birds singing on trees**.
8. I don't know what the **boys on the benches** are talking about.
9. Tourists admire **beautiful woven fabrics from Lombok**.
10. I would like to know one of **the girls performing the Pendet dance**.



## TASK 14

Read the text and complete the statements that follow.

**Jawaban:**

1. the people who speak Sundanese and live in *Pasundan* or *Tatar Sunda*
2. Cilosari; Citanduy Rivers
3. *Desa*
4. birth, death, divorce, restoring a marriage, heading religious praying, a mosque and a cemetery
5. religion



## TASK 15

Work in pairs.

Ask and answer questions about the text in TASK 14, in turns.

**Contoh jawaban:**

- You : Let's toss to decide who will start asking questions.  
Your friend : O.K. One, two, three ... Great! I win!  
You : Please ask. Each of us asks two questions in each round.  
Your friend : O.K. Well, what is the purpose of the text?  
You : The purpose is to describe Sundanese and their culture.

- Your friend : That's right. The second question is, according to the text, why are people who live in *Pasundan* or *Tatar Sunda* called Sundanese?
- You : Let me think. Err ... because they speak Sundanese, right?
- Your friend : Yup! Your turn, please.
- You : What is *Desa*?
- Your friend : It is the smallest unit of settlement pattern of Sundanese.
- You : Correct! Well, what is a *kokolot*?
- Your friend : *Kokolot* is a person in charge of delivering orders, reports, complaints, etc, just like a mediator for the head and the people.
- You : Excellent!



### TASK 16

Complete the text with the correct words from the box.

**Jawaban:**

1. b 2. d 3. f 4. a 5. c



### Variasi

Answer the questions based on the text in TASK 16.

- Where do Nias people live?
- According to the theory, where did Nias people's ancestors come from?
- What evidence is there that the ancestors of Nias people came from that place?
- What large stones can we find in Nias?
- "Therefore, stone is symbolizes the religious, social, eternal, devotional and ...." (Last paragraph)  
What is the synonym of 'eternal'?

**Jawaban**

- They live in North Sumatra.
- They came from Yunan, South China.
- It can be seen from the sword hilts, coffins and their traditional architecture which is dominated by dragon-head motifs.
- We can find menhirs, dolmens, stone coffins, monuments, statues from the megalithic age and house ladders.
- It is immortal, everlasting or permanent.



### TASK 17

Work in groups of three or four.

Match the nouns with the correct modifiers to form meaningful noun phrases.

#### Petunjuk Guru

- Peserta didik diminta membuat kelompok yang terdiri atas tiga atau empat orang.
- Setiap kelompok mengerjakan kegiatan ini, yaitu menjodohkan *noun* dengan *modifier* yang tepat. Mereka diberi waktu sekitar 15 menit.
- Setelah waktu habis, beberapa kelompok diminta tunjuk jari dan membacakan jawaban mereka. Kelompok yang lain menyimak dan membetulkan jawaban yang dirasa kurang tepat.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai, serta terus memotivasi peserta didik agar aktif dalam setiap pembelajaran dan berkomunikasi dalam bahasa Inggris.

**Jawaban:**

- strawberry flavored cake
- traditionally ornamented wooden house
- tasteless black coffee
- splendid high pitched roof
- beautiful pearl necklace



### TASK 18

Complete the sentences with the suitable noun phrases from TASK 17.

**Jawaban:**

- tasteless black coffee
- beautiful pearl necklace
- strawberry flavored cakes
- traditionally ornamented wooden house
- splendid high pitched roof



### TASK 19

Write ten noun phrases on a sheet of paper.

Swap your work with your friend's.

Check your friend's work.

**Contoh jawaban:**

- smart students
- the man who is very kind and generous
- the horse with a strong body
- the man jumping a high stone wall
- the girl you talked to
- a GPS to find our way
- roasted potatoes
- a house in the housing estate
- the boy with a scar on his head
- an accurate strategy



### TASK 20

Make sentences using your friend's noun phrases.

Read the sentences aloud, in turns.

**Contoh jawaban:**

- As **smart students** you should be dependent and creative.
- I'm quite familiar with **the man who is very kind and generous**.
- That kid rides **the horse with a strong body**.
- Visitors applaud **the man jumping a high stone wall**.
- Have you heard the news about **the girl you talked to yesterday**?
- I think we need **a GPS to find our way**.
- Father always has breakfast with **roasted potatoes**.
- There is **a house in the housing estate** for sale.
- I don't recognize **the boy with a scar on his head**.
- Superb! This is **an accurate strategy** to win the competition.



## TASK 21

Find a report text about people.  
 Rewrite it using your own words.  
 Share your work with the class.

### Contoh jawaban:

Madurese are the natives of the island of Madura. They speak an Austronesian language with two principal dialects—West Madurese, concentrated near the town of Pamekasan, south-central Madura, and East Madurese, most prevalent around the town of Sumenep in Madura's eastern region—and a minor variant on the Kangean Islands. Besides, there are three distinct styles of speech, according to status differences between the speakers: informal or *kasar*, between informal and polite or *menengah* and polite/deferential or *halus*. Madurese use the informal style in their daily lives.

Madurese settlements are grouped under a headman. Madurese kinship principles are generally bilateral. Many social organizations, especially for noble families still use the principle of kinship called patrilineal, which is clearly visible in heirloom title inheritance called *pancer* (male lineage).

Most Madurese raise cattle and cultivate cassava, corn, green beans and peanuts for a living. Many others are fishermen.

In Java the Madurese have largely blended with the surrounding indigenous communities through intermarriage. Often living in densely populated areas there, many have given up cultivating rice to pursue maritime professions. As a whole, the Madurese are recognized as devout Muslims.

Adopted from:

- <http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/356207/Madurese> (June 4, 2015)
- Zulyani Hidayah, *Ensiklopedi Suku Bangsa di Indonesia*, Jakarta, Yayasan Pustaka Obor Indonesia, 2015.



## TASK 23

Read the song lyrics.  
 What is the message?

### Contoh jawaban:

The message of the song is that we have to be brave to face everything in our lives. We should keep fighting for our better lives.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

### Jawaban:

1. B    2. E    3. D    4. C    5. A  
 6. A    7. E    8. A    9. B    10. D

B. Write sentences using the following noun phrases.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. I'd like to return **Bayu's notebook** this afternoon.
2. What is your **final score**, Anneke?
3. My parents will hold a **house warming party** this week.
4. Rich people usually live in **ornamented houses**.
5. Yuni has a lot of friends because she is kind, polite and has a **smiling face**.

# UNIT XI

## Where did It Happen?



### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - analyze the social function, structure and linguistic features of news items,
  - comprehend important news,
  - change direct sentences into indirect ones.
2. be able to:
  - analyze the social function, structure and linguistic features of news items,
  - comprehend important news,
  - change direct sentences into indirect ones.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

- be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
- be polite, confident and responsible in communicating in English with others.



Do you often get interesting, important or surprising news from TV, radios, newspapers or people around you? In this unit you will learn how to analyze the social function, structure and linguistic features of news items.



## TASK 1

Work in pairs.

In turns, ask and answer the following questions.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik membaca dan memahami pertanyaan-pertanyaan berikut.
2. Peserta didik bertanya jawab dengan teman sebangkunya berdasarkan pertanyaan-pertanyaan tersebut secara bergantian.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi kesempatan kepada peserta didik untuk bertanya apabila ada hal-hal yang belum dipahami.
4. Setelah waktu dirasa cukup, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta pasangan peserta didik menyampaikan hasil tanya jawab mereka. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi kesempatan kepada lebih dari satu pasangan peserta didik untuk menyampaikan hasil tanya jawab mereka. Bapak/Ibu Guru juga dapat memberi kesempatan kepada pasangan peserta didik yang kurang aktif untuk menyampaikan hasil tanya jawab mereka.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membuat simpulan atas jawaban-jawaban peserta didik.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. Yesterday afternoon.
2. A campaign against dengue fever.
3. The Internet.
4. The news was important.
5. In the capital city, Jakarta.
6. June 15, 2015.
7. To mark ASEAN's dengue fever day.
8. The Health Ministry, Director General for Disease Control and Environmental Health, Jakarta Health Agency's head of Health Control and the Governor of Jakarta.



## TASK 3

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 2.

### Jawaban:

1. The acceleration of infrastructure development on Sebatik.
2. Rp1.4 trillion (US\$104.97 million).
3. From the state budget.
4. On public works projects on the border area of Nunukan regency.
5. To modernize underdeveloped areas in North Kalimantan.



## TASK 5

Work in groups.

Compare the two texts in TASK 4 by referring to the aspects in the following table.

### Jawaban:

Aspects	Text 1	Text 2
Social function	To describe birds of paradise in general.	To inform the readers about the trading of the birds of paradise.

Aspects	Text 1	Text 2
Text structure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• General classification</li> <li>• Descriptions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Headline</li> <li>• Summary of events</li> <li>• Quotes</li> </ul>
Linguistic features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• use of present tense</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• use of past tense</li> <li>• use of direct speech and reported speech</li> </ul>
Source	<a href="http://animals.nationalgeographic.com/animals/birds/bird-of-paradise/">http://animals.nationalgeographic.com/animals/birds/bird-of-paradise/</a>	<a href="http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/98947/wwf-fears-trade-of-bird-of-paradise">http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/98947/wwf-fears-trade-of-bird-of-paradise</a>



## Variasi

Complete the following statements based on the texts in TASK 4.

### Text 1

1. *Paradisaeidae* is more commonly known as \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The striking colors distinguish them as several of the world's most \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ birds.
3. Male birds of paradise use their bright colors and unusual features to \_\_\_\_\_ females.
4. Birds of paradise are found in \_\_\_\_\_.
5. South Africa's bird-of-paradise (*Strelitzia reginae*) is a member of \_\_\_\_\_.

### Text 2

1. World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF) worried about the \_\_\_\_\_ of birds of paradise in Papua.
2. The bird of paradise was sold as \_\_\_\_\_.
3. This would provoke people to \_\_\_\_\_ the birds of paradise.
4. It is shameful because the bird is a \_\_\_\_\_ animal and Papuans are \_\_\_\_\_ of having this beautiful bird.
5. "He hopes people never present ...." (Paragraph 6) The underlined word refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

### Jawaban:

#### Text 1

1. bird of paradise
2. dramatic; attractive
3. attract
4. New Guinea and surrounding islands
5. the banana family

#### Text 2

1. trade
2. a souvenir
3. keep hunting
4. protected; very proud
5. Director of WWFs Papua Program, Benja Victor Mambai





## TASK 6

Read the words and find their meanings.  
Then, memorize the words.

### Jawaban:

- |                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| 1. usaha       | 2. peresmian        |
| 3. perwujudan  | 4. solidaritas      |
| 5. menekankan  | 6. menyediakan      |
| 7. mendorong   | 8. kemerdekaan      |
| 9. pembangunan | 10. memprioritaskan |



## Variasi

Complete the sentences with the correct words from TASK 6.  
Read the sentences aloud, in turns.

- The students take social action to show their \_\_\_\_\_.
- People struggled to gain their \_\_\_\_\_ from colonials.
- My parents always \_\_\_\_\_ me regarding my choice of career.
- You should make a list of your needs and \_\_\_\_\_ what you need most.
- The chief will deliver a speech during the \_\_\_\_\_.
- We have to \_\_\_\_\_ the quality of our products if we want to be the best seller.
- Mr. David has an important role in the \_\_\_\_\_ of this foundation.
- You should do more \_\_\_\_\_ to improve your work.

### Jawaban:

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. solidarity    | 2. independence |
| 3. encourage     | 4. prioritize   |
| 5. inauguration  | 6. emphasize    |
| 7. establishment | 8. efforts      |



## TASK 7

Read the text and answer the questions that follow.

### Jawaban:

- The Internet (<http://www.antaraneews.com/en/news/99226/president-jokowi-lauds-indonesians-efforts-to-assist-palestine>).
- The President's appreciation for the efforts made by Indonesians to build a hospital in Palestine.
- President Jokowi lauds Indonesians' efforts to assist Palestine.
- President Joko Widodo, a member of the presidential communications team (Teten Masduki), MER-C and Palestinians.
- To provide traumatology and surgical services to Palestinians.



## TASK 8

Write the other direct sentences in the text in TASK 7.

### Jawaban:

- "As the largest Muslim country, Indonesia has genuine interests in maintaining peace in the Middle East, which the president will prioritize in his working visits," Pratikno remarked.
- "MER-C has a special program for the development of Indonesia Hospital at Gaza," he affirmed, adding that the hospital will be the largest in Gaza city.
- "It will be an additional visit for the president in the Middle East. We will communicate with the Middle Eastern countries," he said.



## TASK 9

Change the direct sentences you have written in TASK 8 into reported ones.

### Jawaban:

- Pratikno remarked as the largest Muslim country, Indonesia **had** genuine interests in maintaining peace in the Middle East, which the president **would** prioritize in his working visits.
- He affirmed MER-C had a special program for the development of Indonesia Hospital at Gaza.
- He said it would be an additional visit for the president in the Middle East. They would communicate with the Middle Eastern countries.



## TASK 10

Read the following text.

Underline the verbs past in the text.

### Jawaban:

#### High School Student Discovers Alien Planet

An English high school student has become perhaps the youngest person ever to discover an alien planet.

Fifteen-year-old Tom Wagg first detected the gas-giant exoplanet two years ago, while doing work-experience study at Keele University in England. Further observations have now confirmed the existence of the alien world, which lies about 1,000 light-years from Earth and is known as WASP-142b.

"I'm hugely excited to have found a new planet and I'm very impressed that we can find them so far away," Wagg, now 17, said in statement.

Wagg analyzed data gathered by the Wide Angle Search for Planets (WASP) project, looking for tiny dips in stars' brightness caused by planets passing in front of them. This strategy, known as the transit method, is the same one used by NASA's Kepler spacecraft, which has discovered more than half of the roughly 1,900 known exoplanets to date.

"WASP-142b is a 'hot Jupiter'. It's about the same size as our solar system's largest planet, but lies extremely close to its host star, completing one orbit every two days," researchers said.

"Scientists think hot Jupiters form relatively far from their parent stars, then migrate inward over time as the result of gravitational interactions with other planets. So the WASP-142 system likely harbors worlds that have eluded detection thus far," researchers said.

Wagg, a student at the Newcastle-under-Lyme School, Staffordshire, plans to study physics when he attends university. He asked to participate in the work-study program at Keele after learning that the university hosts a research group focused on exoplanets.

"Tom is keen to learn about science, so it was easy to train him to look for planets," Coel Hellier, who heads Keele's WASP project, said in the same statement.

"Wagg's detection of WASP-142b was confirmed by astronomers based at the University of Geneva in Switzerland and the University of Liege in Belgium," researchers said.

Adopted from: <http://www.foxnews.com/science/2015/06/18/high-school-student-discovers-alien-planet/> (June 19, 2015)

"Tom is keen to learn about science, so it was easy to train him to look for planets," Coel Hellier, who heads Keele's WASP project, said in the same statement.

"Wagg's detection of WASP-142b was confirmed by astronomers based at the University of Geneva in Switzerland and the University of Liege in Belgium," researchers said.

Adopted from: <http://www.foxnews.com/science/2015/06/18/high-school-student-discovers-alien-planet/> (June 19, 2015)



## TASK 11

Identify the structure of the text in TASK 10.

Jawaban:

<b>Headline</b>	<b>High School Student Discovers Alien Planet</b>
<b>Summary of Events</b>	<p>An English high school student has become perhaps the youngest person ever to discover an alien planet.</p> <p>Fifteen-year-old Tom Wagg first detected the gas-giant exoplanet two years ago, while doing work-experience study at Keele University in England. Further observations have now confirmed the existence of the alien world, which lies about 1,000 light-years from Earth and is known as WASP-142b.</p>
<b>Quotes</b>	<p>"I'm hugely excited to have found a new planet and I'm very impressed that we can find them so far away," Wagg, now 17, said in statement.</p> <p>Wagg analyzed data gathered by the Wide Angle Search for Planets (WASP) project, looking for tiny dips in stars' brightness caused by planets passing in front of them. This strategy, known as the transit method, is the same one used by NASA's Kepler spacecraft, which has discovered more than half of the roughly 1,900 known exoplanets to date.</p> <p>"WASP-142b is a 'hot Jupiter'. It's about the same size as our solar system's largest planet, but lies extremely close to its host star, completing one orbit every two days," researchers said.</p> <p>"Scientists think hot Jupiters form relatively far from their parent stars, then migrate inward over time as the result of gravitational interactions with other planets. So the WASP-142 system likely harbors worlds that have eluded detection thus far," researchers said.</p> <p>Wagg, a student at the Newcastle-under-Lyme School, Staffordshire, plans to study physics when he attends university. He asked to participate in the work-study program at Keele after learning that the university hosts a research group focused on exoplanets.</p>



## TASK 12

Work in groups.

Find an interesting news item.

Write the headline and details of the news.

Present the news in class.

Contoh jawaban:

### Triyaningsih Wins Second Gold in SEA Games 2015

Singapore (ANTARA News)—Triyaningsih grabbed a second gold medal for Indonesia after winning the womens 10,000 meter event at the South East Asian (SEA) Games 2015 here on Thursday.

A day before, the Indonesian runner won a gold medal after winning the womens 5,000 meter event. "I was running comfortably, as I was relaxed. My strategy was to run fast from the start of the race," she remarked after winning the 10,000 meter event. Triyaningsih retained the title, as she had also won the gold medal in the womens 10,000 meter event at the SEA Games in Myanmar in 2013.

The top Indonesian runner indeed looked calm. From the start, she led. Slowly but surely, she maintained her lead over the other runners. Constantly, she left her fellow runners behind by catching up with them one-by-one. The Indonesian runner was finally able to catch up with Thi Hue Pham and managed to reach the finish line first in 33 minutes and 44.53 seconds.

"Actually, I had an urge to break the record, but I didn't think it was the right time, as I have just recovered. What is clear is that this was a good beginning for me," the 27-year-old runner stated. The SEA Games record at the event stands at 32 minutes, 49.47 seconds held by Triyaningsih at the SEA Games in Laos in 2009 and has not been broken until now.

Triyaningsih would continue training after the SEA Games to improve her time to perform better in future championships including the National Games, SEA Games in 2017 and Asian Games in 2018. Her second gold medal was the fifth for the Indonesian athletics team. Other gold medals in the athletics were won by Hendro in the fast walk event, Maria Londa in the long jump, and Agus Prayogo in the mens 10,000 meters.

Adopted from: <http://www.antaraneews.com/en/news/99181/triyaningsih-wins-second-gold-in-sea-games-2015>



### TASK 13

Write the direct speech in the news you have found in TASK 12. Change the direct speech into reported speech. Share your work with the class.

Contoh jawaban:

#### Direct Speech

1. "I was running comfortably, as I was relaxed. My strategy was to run fast from the start of the race," she remarked after winning the 10,000 meter event.
2. "Actually, I had an urge to break the record, but I didn't think it was the right time, as I have just recovered. What is clear is that this was a good beginning for me," the 27-year-old runner stated.

#### Reported Speech

1. She remarked, after winning the 10,000 meter event, she **had been running** comfortably, as she **had been** relaxed. Her strategy **had been** to run fast from the start of the race.
2. The 27-year-old runner stated actually, she **had had** an urge to break the record, but she **hadn't thought it had been** the right time, as she **had just recovered**. What **was** clear **was** that it **had been** a good beginning for her.



### TASK 14

Complete the following text with the suitable words from the box.

Jawaban:

1. d
2. i
3. f
4. e
5. a
6. j
7. h
8. b



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Answer the questions based on the text in TASK 14.

1. What is the text about?
2. How many people were in danger zone?
3. Why did the people prefer working?
4. What was the mountain's status during the past two weeks?
5. How far did the hot clouds spew?

#### TASK 2

Complete the following text with the suitable words from the box.

- |                    |                |
|--------------------|----------------|
| a. an effort       | b. screened    |
| c. the health risk | d. sold        |
| e. essentially     | f. customers   |
| g. warning letters | h. counterfeit |
| i. beneficial      | j. potentially |

#### FDA Cracks Down on over 1,000 Illegal Online Medicine Sellers

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration said on Thursday it had sent warning letters and seized (1) \_\_\_\_\_ dangerous, unapproved medicines and medical devices from more than 1,050 websites globally. Inspectors from the FDA and other federal agencies (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and seized illegal drugs and medical

devices received through international mail facilities in Chicago, Miami and New York, the FDA said in a statement.

The health regulator said it sent (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to operators of nearly 400 websites and to nine firms distributing unapproved medical devices online.

The targeted prescription drugs included several purported to be the generic versions of FDA-approved drugs such as Nolvadex, Meridia, Valium, Truvada and Advair Diskus.

The devices (4) \_\_\_\_\_ illegally online included colon care products and dermal fillers.

Besides (5) \_\_\_\_\_, the illegal sale of such medicines and products also puts (6) \_\_\_\_\_ at risk of credit card fraud, identity theft and computer viruses," the FDA said.

The move is part of the INTERPOL-led International Internet Week of Action (IIWA), (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to combat the unlawful sale and distribution of illegal and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ medical products.

Adopted from: <http://www.foxnews.com/health/2015/06/18/fda-cracks-down-on-over-1000-illegal-online-medicine-sellers/> (June 19, 2015)

Jawaban:

#### TASK 1

1. People decline to take refuge from Mt. Sinabung.
2. 33,000 people.
3. They were sure they could escape if there was a major eruption.
4. In the most dangerous level.
5. 2.5 kilometers.

#### TASK 2

1. j
2. b
3. g
4. d
5. c
6. f
7. a
8. h



### TASK 15

Rewrite the text in TASK 14 using your own words. You may begin with the following sentence.

Contoh jawaban:

#### Thousands Declined to Flee from Coughing Mt. Sinabung

Thousands of people living on the slopes of Mt. Sinabung in Karo regency, North Sumatra, decided not to take refuge although new warnings about rising the mountain's status had been issued.

"Out of 33,000 people residing in the danger zone, only 10,000 have taken refuge in available tents and government buildings," Head of Disaster Mitigation Agency in Karo Subur Tambun said.

He remarked that villagers had insisted on staying at home and working their farmlands. They were sure they could escape if there was a major eruption. What we can do was to persuade them to take refuge, as quoted by kompas.com.

The mountain's status has been set at its most dangerous level during the past two weeks. On Tuesday, the mountain spewed hot clouds as far as 2.5 kilometers to the southeast. It also emitted volcanic ash and dust as high 700 meters.

Authorities have established a danger zone at a radius of 7 kilometers to the south and southeast of the mountain's caldera, but most locals have declined to take refuge to take care of their crops, including coffee plants.



## TASK 16

Write an outline of news item by choosing an interesting or newsworthy event at or around the school.

**Jawaban:**

<b>Headline</b>	The Principal will Hold a Self Defense Class this Coming School Year
<b>Summary of events</b>	Who: the principal; the students in all levels Where: at school What: self defense class Why: to improve students' confidence



## TASK 17

Write a news item based on the outline you have written in TASK 16.

**Contoh jawaban:**

### The Principal will Hold a Self Defense Class This Coming School Year

Starting this coming school year, our principal will oblige students in all levels to join self-defense in extra-curricular activity.

The principal said that the self-defense class was chosen because it has an essential role to improve the students' confidence. "Self defense class teaches students how to defend themselves in every situation," said the principal.

"The self defense class will not affect the schedules of other extra-curricular activities as we will provide additional hours for the new program," said the principal.



## TASK 18

Work in pairs.

Exchange your writing in TASK 17 with your friend's.

Check your friend's writing.

Present your own news in class after revising it based on your friend's feedback.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik saling berpasangan.
2. Peserta didik saling bertukar teks berita yang mereka susun di TASK 17 dengan pasangannya, kemudian mengoreksi teks berita tersebut.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru membimbing peserta didik ketika mereka mengoreksi hasil tulisan temannya dengan mengingatkan peserta didik bahwa mereka harus memerhatikan struktur teks (*headline*, *lead paragraph*, dan *supporting paragraph(s)*), penggunaan *past verbs*, penggunaan *direct speech*, ejaan, dan ketepatan tanda baca dalam penulisan.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk lebih teliti dalam mengoreksi.
5. Setelah dikoreksi, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membacakan teks berita yang disusun di depan kelas secara bergiliran.
6. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai.



## TASK 20

Read the song lyrics.  
What is the message?

**Contoh jawaban:**

The message of the song is that what makes a person becomes a hero isn't just the power. It's also the heart that cares, and the friend who supports.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. B    2. C    3. C    4. E    5. C  
6. A    7. B    8. A    9. C    10. D

B. Write a news item about trending news what you have heard the last.

**Contoh jawaban:**

### Govt to Issue Regulation on Pension Programs

Prior to the launch of four occupational social security programs later this month, President Joko "Jokowi" Widodo is expected to issue this week a government regulation on pension benefit programs.

BPJS TK president director Elvyn G. Masassya said the President was expected to make a decision after receiving proposals on different pension premiums from stakeholders.

"The President is expected to issue a government regulation to give all relevant sides adequate time to disseminate information on the four programs to all stakeholders, especially workers, employers and BPJS TK as the provider," he said here on Monday.

The President has yet to issue the government regulation, since stakeholders have been at odds over the premium percentage for the pension program. Workers have demanded 12 percent while employers have proposed 1.5 percent. BPJS TK has proposed 8 percent (5 percent from employers and 3 percent from workers) while the Finance Ministry has proposed 1.5 percent.

Elvyn said BPJS TK proposed an 8 percent premium because it was halfway between the proposals by workers and employers and moderate compared to those in other ASEAN member countries.

"If the President accepts the BPJS TK proposal of 8 percent for the pension program's premium, the total premium for the four programs will only be 20 percent, which is moderate compared to Malaysia's 35 percent, Singapore's 30 percent and Thailand's 18.5 percent," he said.

Adopted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/06/15/govt-issue-regulation-pension-programs.html> (June 16, 2015)

# UNIT XII

## What is the News about?



### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. analyze the social function, structure and linguistic features of news items,
  - b. comprehend important news.
2. be able to:
  - a. analyze the social function, structure and linguistic features of news items,
  - b. comprehend important news.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be polite, confident and responsible in communicating with others.



Source: [http://www.123rf.com/photo\\_16191181\\_stack-of-newspapers-with-business-news-isolated-on-white-background-with-reflection-effect.html](http://www.123rf.com/photo_16191181_stack-of-newspapers-with-business-news-isolated-on-white-background-with-reflection-effect.html), downloaded June 29, 2015

There are many events that happen around us every day. The important and newsworthy events are covered by the news. The news may be provided by newspapers, TV or radios. In this unit, you will learn how to analyze the social function, structure and linguistic features of news items and comprehend the news.



### TASK 1

Work in pairs.  
Discuss with your friends about national exams using a computer-based system.  
Share your result with the class.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mencari pasangan, misalnya dengan teman yang duduk di belakang atau di depannya.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi kesempatan peserta didik berdiskusi tentang pelaksanaan ujian nasional yang menerapkan *computer-based system*. Diskusi ini merupakan persiapan bagi peserta didik untuk memahami teks berikutnya tentang pelaksanaan ujian nasional yang menerapkan sistem berbasis komputer.

#### Contoh jawaban:

##### The result of discussion:

1. Several schools are ready to implement computer-based system in national examination.
2. Computer-based exam will be more effective and efficient than paper-based exam.
3. Computer-based exam will reduce the need for extensive security to transport exam materials.



### TASK 3

Find the synonyms and meanings of the following words.

#### Jawaban:

No.	Word	Synonym	Meaning
1.	introduce	acquaint	memperkenalkan
2.	eliminate	remove	menyingkirkan
3.	prevent	avoid	mencegah, menghindari
4.	work	run	bekerja
5.	alert	warn	memperingatkan
6.	expect	hope	mengharapkan, berharap
7.	encourage	push	mendorong
8.	report	inform	melaporkan



### TASK 5

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 4.

#### Jawaban:

1. At 585 schools across the country.
2. To help save money by practically eliminating printing and distribution costs.
3. The preparation for the national exam had been going according to the plan.
4. There were two columns, the questions and the multiple choice answers.
5. The students had to click on the right answer.
6. The system would automatically alert them.
7. Using the manual system, the students needed a lot of time trying to make sure that no mistakes were made.
8. Over 1.5 million high school students.
9. About exam paper leakages.
10. To report any cheating.



### TASK 6

Read the following text.



#### Variasi

Complete the statements based on the text in TASK 6.

1. There are 120 million children under 14 years old that are involved in \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Most of them work in \_\_\_\_\_.
3. To find \_\_\_\_\_ as adults, they need to get skills.
4. According to Alex Thomas, education had helped him to have \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The CNN Freedom Project is emphasizing the \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Jawaban:

1. child labor
2. agriculture
3. decent jobs
4. lots of opportunities
5. value of education



### TASK 7

Identify the structures of the text in TASK 6.

#### Jawaban:

Main event	Education can end child labor
Who was involved?	The International Labor Organization, children involved in child labor and CNN anchors.
When did it happen?	No time mentioned.
Where did it happen?	No place mentioned.
Source of news	CNN
Statements from sports anchor and correspondent, Alex Thomas	Education helped me to have lots of opportunities. My sports broadcast career began at university.



#### Variasi

##### TASK 1

Read the text and identify the structure.

##### Indonesia to Deport 300 Myanmar Fishermen

Ambon, Maluku (ANTARA News) - The Immigration Office of Ambon, in cooperation with the International Organization for Migration (IOM), will deport 300 fishermen to their country of origin, Myanmar.

The identification of the immigrants was conducted on June 23 with the cooperation of the Embassy of Myanmar in Indonesia, Head of the Ambon Immigration office Nanang Koesdarjanto stated here on Thursday.

"The Myanmar embassy's staff came to Ambon after being contacted by the Myanmar fishermen who required documents to return to their home country," he noted.

The embassy sent its staff to gather data from the immigrants to prepare their travel documents.

When the documents are ready, they will immediately be deported to Myanmar with the assistance of the IOM, the Ambon immigration office chief stated.

The immigrants are crew members of ships that are currently docked in Ambon.

They want to return to their country, as they are now practically jobless since their trawlers can no longer be used for fishing after the Indonesian government declared a moratorium on issuing licenses for foreign fishing trawlers in November 2014.

The number of foreign fishermen stranded on several remote islands in eastern Indonesia has spiralled to four thousand, according to media reports.

Many are migrant workers abandoned by their boat captains after the government passed the moratorium, the media said quoting the IOM.

Adopted from: <http://www.antaraneews.com/en/news/99334/indonesia-to-deport-300-myanmarese-fishermen> (June 27, 2015)

Main event	
Who was involved?	
When did it happen?	
Where did it happen?	
Source of news	
Statements from Head of the Ambon Immigration office	
Statement from the media reports	

#### TASK 2

Complete the statements based on the text in TASK 1.

- The news headline is \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ was conducted on June 23 with the cooperation of the Embassy of Myanmar in Indonesia.
- The embassy sent its staff to gather data from the immigrants to \_\_\_\_\_.
- The immigrants \_\_\_\_\_ to Myanmar with the assistance of the IOM after the document are ready.
- The Indonesian government declared a moratorium on \_\_\_\_\_ in November 2014.

Jawaban:

#### TASK 1

Main event	The Immigration Office of Ambon will deport 300 Myanmarese fishermen
Who was involved?	The immigrants (Myanmarese fishermen), head of the Ambon Immigration office, the embassy staff, the Indonesian government, and media reports.
When did it happen?	The identification of the immigrants was conducted on June 23.
Where did it happen?	Ambon, Maluku.
Source of news	ANTARA News

Statements from Head of the Ambon Immigration office

The Myanmar embassy's staff came to Ambon after being contacted by the Myanmarese fishermen who required documents to return to their home country.

Statement from the media reports

The number of foreign fishermen stranded on several remote islands in eastern Indonesia has spiralled to four thousand.

#### TASK 2

- Indonesia to Deport 300 Myanmarese Fishermen
- The identification of the immigrants
- prepare their travel documents
- would immediately be deported
- issuing licenses for foreign fishing trawlers



#### TASK 8

Read the following texts.

Then, complete the blank spaces in the tables that follow with direct and indirect sentences.

Jawaban:

#### Text 1

Direct Sentence	Indirect Sentence
Sanofi Pasteur Indonesia general manager, Joko Murdianto, said, "It only <b>needed</b> the approval of Indonesia's Food and Drug Monitoring Agency (BPOM) for the vaccine to be made available for people here."	Sanofi Pasteur Indonesia general manager, Joko Murdianto, said that it only <b>needed</b> the approval of Indonesia's Food and Drug Monitoring Agency (BPOM) for the vaccine to be made available for people here.
"We hope that the vaccine <b>will be</b> available by early 2016," Joko said on Thursday. " <b>We're waiting</b> for BPOM approval."	Joko said on Thursday that they hoped that the vaccine <b>would be</b> available by early 2016 and <b>they're</b> waiting for BPOM approval.
"The vaccines <b>are supplied</b> by our office in France. <b>We can</b> produce up to 100 million doses of vaccine each year," Joko said. " <b>We will begin</b> distribution once the country requiring the vaccine gives its approval [to administer the vaccine to its people]."	Joko said that the vaccines <b>were supplied</b> by their office in France. <b>They could</b> produce up to 100 million doses of vaccine each year. <b>They would begin</b> distribution once the country requiring the vaccine gave its approval [to administer the vaccine to its people]."
"One recent estimate <b>indicates</b> 390 million dengue infections per year of which 96 million manifest clinically (with any severity of disease)," the WHO says.	The WHO said that one recent estimate <b>indicated</b> 390 million dengue infections per year of which 96 million manifested clinically (with any severity of disease).

**Text 2**

Direct Sentence	Indirect Sentence
Japan's transport ministry said, "A passenger on one of Japan's high-speed bullet trains <b>tries</b> to set himself or herself on fire Tuesday, causing smoke to fill the carriage and forcing the train to stop."	A passenger on one of Japan's high-speed bullet trains <b>tried</b> to set himself or herself on fire Tuesday, causing smoke to fill the carriage and forcing the train to stop, Japan's transport ministry said.
A ministry official said, "Two people <b>are</b> found unconscious."	Two people <b>were</b> found unconscious, a ministry official said.
Japanese media reported, "One <b>died</b> , but that <b>cannot</b> be immediately confirmed."	Japanese media reported that one <b>had died</b> , but that <b>could</b> not be immediately confirmed.
The ministry official, who spoke on condition of anonymity, citing department policy, said, "The train <b>comes</b> to an emergency stop when a passenger <b>presses</b> the emergency button after noticing one of the two passengers collapsed on the floor on a front car deck near the restroom."	The train <b>came</b> to an emergency stop when a passenger <b>pressed</b> the emergency button after noticing one of the two passengers collapsed on the floor on a front car deck near the restroom, according to the ministry official, who spoke on condition of anonymity, citing department policy.
The official said, "The passenger apparently <b>poured</b> oil over his or her head before setting him/herself on fire."	The passenger apparently <b>had poured</b> oil over his or her head before setting him/herself on fire, the official said.
He said, "The second person <b>is found</b> collapsed in an area between the first and second cars."	He said the second person <b>was found</b> collapsed in an area between the first and second cars.
Public television NHK said, "Dozens of passengers <b>are injured</b> after inhaling smoke."	Public television NHK said dozens of passengers <b>were injured</b> after inhaling smoke.
NHK said, "The fire has been extinguished and passengers were evacuated from the train."	The fire had been extinguished and passengers <b>had been evacuated</b> from the train, NHK said.



**Variasi**

**TASK 1**

Answer the following questions based on the texts in TASK 8.

**Text 1**

1. What vaccine had Sanofi Paster discovered?
2. When may the vaccine be available in Indonesia?
3. Who were the vaccines supplied by?
4. What did Sanofi expect of the vaccine?
5. When would Sanofi begin marketing the vaccine in several Asian countries?

**Text 2**

1. What is the news headline?
2. According to the ministry official, how many people were found unconscious?
3. When did the train come to an emergency stop?
4. Where did the incident happen?
5. "A passenger on one of Japan's high-speed bullet trains tried to set himself or herself on fire Tuesday, ...." (First paragraph) What does the underlined phrase refer to?

**TASK 2**

Read the following text.

Then, complete the blank spaces in the table that follow with direct and indirect sentences.

**VP Kalla Opens Batik Nusantara 2015 Exhibition**

Jakarta (ANTARA News)—Vice President M. Jusuf Kalla opened the "Gelar Batik Nusantara 2015" exhibition at the Jakarta Convention Center on Wednesday.

Organized by the Indonesian Batik Foundation and PT Mediatama Binakreasi, it will be held from June 24 to 28 with the theme, "Batik Uniting Nations." The expo will showcase thousands of coastal batik motifs and those of the best Indonesian batik collectors.

"The popularity of batik is more widespread now than ever before," the Vice President said in his opening address.

Kalla noted that batik was no longer merely a traditional dress, but had undergone innovations for the international market and had been adopted by several countries.

He explained that innovations in batik had first started on the island of Java, but then, it had evolved in various regions across the Indonesian archipelago.

Furthermore, besides being a cultural factor that served to unify the nation, batik was also developed in a number of neighboring countries such as India and Malaysia, the vice president remarked.

In addition, he pointed out that since batik had been recognized as a World Cultural Heritage by the UNESCO in 2009, its reach continued to increase.

Kalla opined that as batik had become part of both official and casual clothing, there were challenges, as well, in terms of productivity and innovation.

According to the Vice President, batik had been transformed from a form of traditional art into a masterpiece of global standard. It was also one of Indonesia's cultural products the people were proud of and wanted to preserve.

Therefore, Kalla emphasized that the Gelar Batik Nusantara 2015 exhibition was expected to open market opportunities and attracted entrepreneurs, investors and institutions to develop batik as an international product.

Adopted from: <http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/99325/vp-kalla-opens-batik-nusantara-2015-exhibition> (June 27, 2015)

Direct Sentence	Indirect Sentence
"The popularity of batik is more widespread now than ever before," the Vice President said in his opening address.	
	Kalla noted that batik was no longer merely a traditional dress, but had undergone innovations for the international market and had been adopted by several countries.



Direct Sentence	Indirect Sentence
	He explained that innovations in batik had first started on the island of Java, but then, it had evolved in various regions across the Indonesian archipelago.
	Furthermore, besides being a cultural factor that served to unify the nation, batik was also developed in a number of neighboring countries such as India and Malaysia, the vice president remarked.
	In addition, he pointed out that since batik had been recognized as a World Cultural Heritage by the UNESCO in 2009, its reach continued to increase.
	Kalla opined that as batik had become part of both official and casual clothing, there were challenges, as well, in terms of productivity and innovation.
	According to the Vice President, batik had been transformed from a form of traditional art into a masterpiece of global standard. It was also one of Indonesia's cultural products the people were proud of and want to preserve.
	Therefore, Kalla emphasized that the Gelar Batik Nusantara 2015 exhibition was expected to open market opportunities and attract entrepreneurs, investors and institutions to develop batik as an international product.

Jawaban:

#### TASK 1

##### Text 1

1. A dengue fever vaccine.
2. By early 2016.
3. By their office in France.
4. Sanofi expected the vaccine to support the WHO's ambition to reduce dengue mortality by 50 percent and morbidity by 25 percent by 2020.
5. From October.

##### Text 2

1. Passenger sets self on fire on Japan's bullet train.
2. Two people.
3. When a passenger pressed the emergency button.
4. When the train passed Odawara city, west of Tokyo, on its way to Osaka.
5. A passenger on one of Japan's high-speed bullet trains.

#### TASK 2

Direct Sentence	Indirect Sentence
"The popularity of batik <b>is</b> more widespread <b>now</b> than ever before," the Vice President said in his opening address.	The Vice President said that the popularity of batik <b>was</b> more widespread <b>then</b> than ever before.
Kalla said, "Batik <b>was</b> no longer merely a traditional dress, but <b>underwent</b> innovations for the international market and <b>was adopted</b> by several countries."	Kalla noted that batik <b>had been</b> no longer merely a traditional dress, but <b>had undergone</b> innovations for the international market and <b>had been adopted</b> by several countries.
He explained, "Innovations in batik first <b>started</b> on the island of Java, but <b>then</b> , it <b>has evolved</b> in various regions across the Indonesian archipelago."	He explained that innovations in batik <b>had</b> first <b>started</b> on the island of Java, but <b>then</b> , it <b>had evolved</b> in various regions across the Indonesian archipelago.
The vice president remarked, "Furthermore, besides being a cultural factor that <b>serves</b> to unify the nation, batik <b>is also developed</b> in a number of neighboring countries such as India and Malaysia."	Furthermore, besides being a cultural factor that <b>served</b> to unify the nation, batik <b>was also developed</b> in a number of neighboring countries such as India and Malaysia, the vice president remarked.
In addition, he pointed out, "Since batik <b>was recognized</b> as a World Cultural Heritage by the UNESCO in 2009, its reach continues to increase."	In addition, he pointed out that since batik <b>had been recognized</b> as a World Cultural Heritage by the UNESCO in 2009, its reach continued to increase.
Kalla opined, "As batik <b>has become</b> part of both official and casual clothing, there <b>are</b> challenges, as well, in terms of productivity and innovation."	Kalla opined that as batik <b>had become</b> part of both official and casual clothing, there <b>were</b> challenges, as well, in terms of productivity and innovation.
The Vice President said, "Batik <b>has been transformed</b> from a form of traditional art into a masterpiece of global standard. It <b>is</b> also one of Indonesia's cultural products the people <b>are</b> proud of and want to preserve."	According to the Vice President, batik <b>had been transformed</b> from a form of traditional art into a masterpiece of global standard. It <b>was</b> also one of Indonesia's cultural products the people <b>were</b> proud of and wanted to preserve.
Therefore, Kalla emphasized, "The Gelar Batik Nusantara 2015 exhibition <b>is expected</b> to open market opportunities and <b>attract</b> entrepreneurs, investors and institutions to develop batik as an international product."	Therefore, Kalla emphasized that the Gelar Batik Nusantara 2015 exhibition <b>was expected</b> to open market opportunities and <b>attracted</b> entrepreneurs, investors and institutions to develop batik as an international product.



## TASK 9

Complete the following text with the suitable words from the box.

Jawaban:

1. c    2. h    3. b    4. f
5. i    6. a    7. g    8. e



## Variasi

### TASK 1

Identify the structure of the text in TASK 9.

Main event	
Who was involved?	
When did it happen?	
Where did it happen?	
Source of news	
Statements from head of the research and development agency at the ministry	
Statement from the hospital's director	

### TASK 2

Complete the following text with the suitable words from the box.

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| a. comprehension | b. previously  |
| c. autonomy      | d. encouraged  |
| e. evaluation    | f. announced   |
| g. challenges    | h. benefits    |
| i. overcome      | j. implemented |

### VP Kalla Says National Exam Revamp Will 'Spoil' Students

Vice President Jusuf Kalla said on Monday that he disagreed with changes to Indonesia's education system that now give schools sole control over students' graduation and rely less on national exams.

Education Minister Anies Baswedan (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a major overhaul of Indonesia's national exams earlier this year, drastically reducing the significance of the controversial national test.

The exams, which were (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the main determinant for whether a student moved up a grade or graduated, will continue to be administered to students in the sixth, ninth and twelfth grades.

The new (3) \_\_\_\_\_ scheme is ostensibly designed to consider students' overall performance and those who do not pass the exams can resit them the following year.

The program has run afoul of Kalla, however, who claimed it would only spoil Indonesian students. He said the national exam program (4) \_\_\_\_\_ students to study hard and be disciplined.

Critics have long argued that the exams encourage rote learning and memorization aimed at achieving a high score, rather than depth or (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Baswedan admitted there would be (6) \_\_\_\_\_ with the new system, which is to be (7) \_\_\_\_\_ this year.

He said giving schools (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to mark their own students' exams may cause several problems for in-school corruption, but he hoped that overall the program would be a success.

Adopted from: <http://thejakartaglobe.beritasatu.com/news/vp-kalla-says-national-exam-revamp-will-spoil-students/> (June 27, 2015)

Jawaban:

### TASK 1

Main event	Indonesian toddler suspected with MERS virus tests negative
Who was involved?	An Indonesian toddler, the Ministry of Health, head of the research and development agency at the ministry Tjandra Yoga Aditama and the hospital's director Fatmawati.
When did it happen?	An Indonesian toddler suspected of exposure to Middle East Respiratory Syndrome, or MERS, during a recent trip to South Korea.
Where did it happen?	Jakarta
Source of news	<a href="http://thejakartaglobe.beritasatu.com">http://thejakartaglobe.beritasatu.com</a>
Statements from head of the research and development agency at the ministry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The test result of a patient suspected to have been infected with MERS-CoV was negative.</li> <li>• Even though no MERS cases had been detected in Indonesia, the government was paying special attention, ....</li> <li>• All hajj pilgrims should check whether they have any medical conditions that could make them more prone to MERS infection.</li> </ul>
Statement from the hospital's director	The boy was immediately treated with a special procedure because two weeks after the vacation he developed several MERS clinical symptoms including fever, trouble breathing and a cough.

### TASK 2

1. f    2. b    3. e    4. d
5. a    6. g    7. j    8. c



## TASK 10

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 9.

Jawaban:

1. The test result of Indonesian toddler suspected with MERS virus was negative.
2. To Sulianti Saroso Infectious Disease Hospital in Jakarta.
3. Because two weeks after the vacation, he developed several MERS clinical symptoms including fever, trouble breathing and a cough.

4. No, they haven't. The test results of patients suspected of having been infected with MERS are all negative.
5. The Ministry of Health has urged pilgrims not to take pictures or have close contact with camels to avoid transmission.



## TASK 11

Look for interesting news from newspaper, TV or on the Internet. Present the news in class.

**Contoh jawaban:**

### Govt Starts Distribution of Social Benefit Cards

Tens of millions of disadvantaged Indonesians will start receiving the government's much-touted Indonesia Health Card (KIS) and Indonesia Smart Card (KIP) from this week—months after the flagship social benefit programs were officially unveiled.

The government says the cards will improve Indonesians' access to education and health services, and it aims to distribute them to more than 100 million people.

A total of 88.2 million people will receive the KIS cards, which provide the nation's poor with access to healthcare.

Card holders will be entitled to treatment at public primary care clinics (*puskesmas*) and treatment in third-class hospitals. Benefits provided under the health card will be managed by the Social Security Agency (BPJS) but funded by insurance premiums of Rp19,225 (\$1.60) per person—paid by the Ministry of Health.

Meanwhile, 20.3 million people will be provided with the KIP cards, which entitle students from underprivileged families to 12 years' free education, as well as education resources and free higher education provided they pass university entrance exams.

Workers at a rubber plantation in North Sumatra were the first to get their hands on the KIS cards on April 18, but the government started national distribution on Tuesday.

Distribution of the cards, a campaign promise of President Joko Widodo, was slated for late 2014, but budget wrangling that was only resolved in January pushed the schedule back.

"We'll start distributing the cards this week," Jokowi said on Tuesday after disbursing 3,289 KIS cards to employees of state-owned shipping and dock company, *Dok & Perkapalan Kodja Bahari*, in North Jakarta.

The cards are similar to the Jakarta Health Card (KJS) and Jakarta Smart Card (JKP) implemented when Jokowi was governor of the capital.

Adopted from: <http://thejakartaglobe.beritasatu.com/news/distribution-of-healthy-indonesia-and-smart-indonesia-cards-start-this-week/> (June 27, 2015)



## TASK 12

Summarize the news you have found in TASK 11. Write important points of the news.

**Contoh jawaban:**

- Government starts the distribution of social benefit cards; Indonesia Health Card (KIS) and Indonesia Smart Card (KIP).
- The cards will improve Indonesians' access to education and health services.
- The recipients of the KIS cards are 88.2 million people, while the KIP cards recipients are 20.3 million people.
- KIS card provides the nation's poor with access to healthcare.
- KIS holders will be able use the cards for treatment at public primary care clinics (*puskesmas*) and treatment in third-class hospitals. The cards will be managed by BPJS with insurance premiums of Rp19,225 (\$1.60) per person funded by the Ministry of Health.
- The KIP cards are for students from underprivileged families to 12 years' free education, as well as education resources and free higher education provided they pass university entrance exams.



## TASK 13

Work in groups.

Tell the news you have summarized in TASK 12, in turns.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Pada kegiatan ini masing-masing peserta didik sudah mempunyai hasil ringkasan di TASK 1. Mereka akan saling menyampaikan hasil ringkasan tersebut dalam kerja kelompok sehingga masing-masing peserta didik akan mempunyai hasil ringkasan yang sama.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membentuk kelompok. Tiap kelompok terdiri atas tiga peserta didik.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik saling menyampaikan teks berita yang telah mereka ringkas pada TASK 12, secara bergiliran. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan mencatat hal-hal penting yang terdapat di teks berita yang disampaikan oleh temannya.
4. Peserta didik diminta membuat ringkasan berita-berita yang mereka peroleh dari temannya.
5. Selama kegiatan berlangsung, Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk aktif dalam kegiatan ini.

**Contoh jawaban:**

No.	Name	The Important Information from the News	The Summary of News
1.	Student 1	<b>Who:</b> 1,001 Buku (1,001 Books) <b>Where:</b> in Santa Market in Kebayoran Baru, South Jakarta <b>When:</b> from Saturday to Sunday <b>What:</b> holding a garage sale <b>Why:</b> to fund its biennial Independent Library Workshop and Olympiad	1,001 Buku (1,001 Books), a community that organizes donations of books to children, is holding a garage sale in Santa Market in Kebayoran Baru, South Jakarta, from Saturday to Sunday to fund its biennial Independent Library Workshop and Olympiad, which will be held in August. Adopted from: <a href="http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/1001-buku-raises-funds-upcoming-library-event.html">http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/1001-buku-raises-funds-upcoming-library-event.html</a> (July 7, 2015)

No.	Name	The Important Information from the News	The Summary of News
2.	Student 2	<b>Who:</b> families whose homes were destroyed <b>Where:</b> in Washington <b>When:</b> on Tuesday as firefighters fought to contain the virtually uncontrollable blaze <b>What:</b> returning to the scene of destruction <b>Why:</b> a massive grassland wildfire	Families whose homes were destroyed in a massive grassland wildfire in Washington were returning to the scene of destruction on Tuesday, as firefighters fought to contain the virtually uncontrollable blaze. Adopted from: <a href="http://thejakartaglobe.beritasatu.com/international/residents-return-see-homes-destroyed-washington-state-fire/">http://thejakartaglobe.beritasatu.com/international/residents-return-see-homes-destroyed-washington-state-fire/</a> (July 7, 2015)

Berikut merupakan teks-teks berita yang dirangkum oleh peserta didik dalam kelompok tersebut.

#### Text 1

##### 1,001 Buku Raises Funds for Upcoming Library Event

1,001 Buku (1,001 Books), a community that organizes donations of books to children, is holding a garage sale in Santa Market in Kebayoran Baru, South Jakarta, from Saturday to Sunday to fund its biennial Independent Library Workshop and Olympiad, which will be held in August.

1,001 Buku spokesperson, Lucia Priandarini, said during the opening of the garage sale on Saturday that the August event was expected to gather around 200 owners and users of small independent libraries across the country.

Lucia said the event, held every two years, was a vital opportunity for owners of small libraries to meet their fellows and share their experiences.

"We can gain a deeper understanding of the challenges and obstacles of independent libraries throughout Indonesia by talking to owners," she said.

Owners, she added, could get to know each other and, if from the same area, exchange books. "Most of them have limited collections, so exchanging books can be very useful," she said, adding that most of the libraries were aimed at children.

Adopted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/1001-buku-raises-funds-upcoming-library-event.html> (July 7, 2015)

#### Text 2

##### Residents Return to See Homes Destroyed by Washington State Fire

Families whose homes were destroyed in a massive grassland wildfire in Washington state were returning to the scene of destruction on Tuesday as firefighters fought to contain the virtually uncontrollable blaze, officials said.

Fueled by extreme heat and gusting winds, the so-called Sleepy Hollow fire had scorched nearly 1,200 hectares of rolling grasslands and brush around the city of Wenatchee since blazing a parched central Washington hillside on Sunday. The fire was just 10 percent contained late on Tuesday.

At least 24 residences were destroyed or badly damaged at the north end of the city of 30,000 residents, as were four downtown businesses including a recycling plant, an agricultural chemical distributor and two packing plants, said Kay McKellar, spokeswoman for the fire management team.

Adopted from: <http://thejakartaglobe.beritasatu.com/international/residents-return-see-homes-destroyed-washington-state-fire/> (July 7, 2015)



### TASK 14

Work in another group.

Tell your new group about one of the news you have summarized in your old group, in turns.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca kembali hal-hal penting dan ringkasan berita yang disampaikan oleh temannya pada kelompok terdahulu.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik mencari dua teman lain untuk membentuk kelompok baru.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta setiap anggota kelompok menyampaikan ringkasan berita dari teman-teman anggota kelompok terdahulu (ringkasan berita yang mereka peroleh di TASK 12 dan TASK 13), secara bergiliran. Anggota kelompok yang lain menyimak dan mencatat hal-hal penting yang terdapat pada berita yang disampaikan oleh temannya.
4. Kemudian, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membuat ringkasan berita-berita yang mereka peroleh dari anggota kelompoknya.
5. Apabila masih ada waktu, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta beberapa peserta didik menyampaikan hasil ringkasannya di depan kelas.
6. Selanjutnya, peserta didik diminta mengumpulkan hasil ringkasan berita yang mereka peroleh tersebut.
7. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengamati kegiatan ini dan memberikan penilaian.

#### Contoh jawaban:

No.	Name	The Important Information from the News	The Summary of News
1.	Student 1	<b>Who:</b> President Joko "Jokowi" Widodo; the government <b>Where:</b> Indonesia <b>When:</b> no time mentioned <b>What:</b> prioritize the development of environmentally friendly power plants <b>Why:</b> to meet its target of generating an additional 35,000 megawatts (MW) of electricity by 2019	President Joko "Jokowi" Widodo has asserted that the government will prioritize the development of environmentally friendly power plants to meet its target of generating an additional 35,000 megawatts (MW) of electricity by 2019. Adopted from: <a href="http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/ri-prioritize-environmentally-friendly-power-plants.html">http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/ri-prioritize-environmentally-friendly-power-plants.html</a> (July 7, 2015)

No.	Name	The Important Information from the News	The Summary of News
2.	Student 2	<p><b>Who:</b> the management of Bali's I Gusti Ngurah Rai Airport</p> <p><b>Where:</b> Ngurah Rai airport, Bali</p> <p><b>When:</b> no time mentioned</p> <p><b>What:</b> making optimum use of a body temperature detector</p> <p><b>Why:</b> to prevent the MERS-CoV from spreading</p>	<p>Ngurah Rai airport in Bali uses a MERS-CoV detector optimally. The management of Bali's I Gusti Ngurah Rai Airport is making optimum use of a body temperature detector to prevent the Middle East Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (MERS-CoV) from spreading.</p> <p>Adopted from: <a href="http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/99415/ngurah-rai-airport-in-bali-uses-mers-cov-detector-optimally">http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/99415/ngurah-rai-airport-in-bali-uses-mers-cov-detector-optimally</a> (July 7, 2015)</p>

Berikut merupakan teks-teks berita yang dirangkum oleh peserta didik dalam kelompok tersebut.

**Text 1**

**RI to Prioritize Environmentally Friendly Power Plants**

President Joko "Jokowi" Widodo has asserted that the government will prioritize the development of environmentally friendly power plants to meet its target of generating an additional 35,000 megawatts (MW) of electricity by 2019.

"It has been stated by the state-owned oil and gas company Pertamina president director, Dwi Soetjipto, that Indonesia has 28,000 MW of geothermal energy potential. Geothermal energy is one of the environmentally friendly energy sources, along with wind, solar, waves and biomass, that we can focus on," Jokowi said as quoted by Antara.

The President was speaking during a ceremony to mark the inaugural operation of Pertamina's Kamojang geothermal power plant Unit V in Kamojang, West Java, on Sunday morning.

Jokowi asserted that the government would gradually shift its focus from coal-fueled electricity plants to power plants that were more environmentally friendly.

"I have specifically ordered the coordinating economic minister, the state-owned enterprises minister, and the energy and mineral resources minister that, in future, environmentally friendly electricity plants must be prioritized," he said.

Adopted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/ri-prioritize-environmentally-friendly-power-plants.html> (July 7, 2015)

**Text 2**

**Ngurah Rai Airport in Bali Uses MERS-CoV Detector Optimally**

The management of Bali's I Gusti Ngurah Rai Airport is making optimum use of a body temperature detector to prevent the Middle East Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (MERS-CoV) from spreading.

"We make the best use of the detector, as many airlines fly directly to Bali from a number of countries plagued by the disease," General Manager of Angkasa Pura of I Gusti Ngurah Rai Airport, Trikora Harjo, said on Thursday.

He added that the detector was operated by health officers at the airport's international arrivals terminal.

According to Harjo, the detector is activated when there is a new airline arriving from any of the countries where cases of MERS-CoV were reported, such as South Korea and several Middle Eastern countries, among others.

"The detector is activated when there are airlines arriving from South Korea and Arab countries," Harjo affirmed, adding that so far, no passengers arrived at the airport infected with the virus.

Adopted from: <http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/99415/ngurah-rai-airport-in-bali-uses-mers-cov-detector-optimally> (July 7, 2015)

**The Summaries of the News**

<b>News 1</b>	Tens of millions of disadvantaged Indonesians will start receiving the government's much-touted Indonesia Health Card (KIS) and Indonesia Smart Card (KIP) from this week—months after the flagship social benefit programs were officially unveiled. Adopted from: <a href="http://thejakartaglobe.beritasatu.com/news/distribution-of-healthy-indonesia-and-smart-indonesia-cards-start-this-week/">http://thejakartaglobe.beritasatu.com/news/distribution-of-healthy-indonesia-and-smart-indonesia-cards-start-this-week/</a> (June 27, 2015)
<b>News 2</b>	1,001 Buku (1,001 Books), a community that arranges donations of books to children, is holding a garage sale in Santa Market in Kebayoran Baru, South Jakarta, from Saturday to Sunday to fund its biennial Independent Library Workshop and Olympiad, which will be held in August. Adopted from: <a href="http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/1001-buku-raises-funds-upcoming-library-event.html">http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/1001-buku-raises-funds-upcoming-library-event.html</a> (July 7, 2015)
<b>News 3</b>	Families whose homes were destroyed in a massive grassland wildfire in Washington state were returning to scenes of destruction on Tuesday as firefighters fought to contain the virtually unchecked blaze. Adopted from: <a href="http://thejakarta.globe.beritasatu.com/international/residents-return-see-homes-destroyed-washington-state-fire/">http://thejakarta.globe.beritasatu.com/international/residents-return-see-homes-destroyed-washington-state-fire/</a> (July 7, 2015)
<b>News 4</b>	President Joko "Jokowi" Widodo has asserted that the government will prioritize the development of environmentally friendly power plants to meet its target of generating an additional 35,000 megawatts (MW) of electricity by 2019. Adopted from: <a href="http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/ri-prioritize-environmentally-friendly-power-plants.html">http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/07/05/ri-prioritize-environmentally-friendly-power-plants.html</a> (July 7, 2015)
<b>News 5</b>	Ngurah Rai airport in Bali uses MERS-CoV detector optimally. The management of Bali's I Gusti Ngurah Rai Airport is making optimum use of a body temperature detector to prevent the Middle East Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (MERS-CoV) from spreading. Adopted from: <a href="http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/99415/ngurah-rai-airport-in-bali-uses-mers-cov-detector-optimally">http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/99415/ngurah-rai-airport-in-bali-uses-mers-cov-detector-optimally</a> (July 7, 2015)



## TASK 16

Read the song lyrics.  
What is the message?

**Contoh jawaban:**

The song tells us that we live to make our dreams into reality.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. E | 4. A | 5. D  |
| 6. E | 7. B | 8. A | 9. D | 10. A |

B. Write a news item about a newsworthy event that happened recently.

**Contoh jawaban:**

**Govt Allocates Rp 109b to Renovate Slum Area**

The Public Works and Public Housing Ministry is to allocate funds to revamp Jambi's Legok subdistrict, in Telanaipura district, which has been categorized as a slum area, an official has said.

"The ministry's Cipta Karya directorate general and the Supreme Audit Agency [BPK] have inspected the Legok area. They are ready to provide Rp 109 billion [about US\$8.3 million] in assistance funds to modernize the area," Jambi Mayor Syarif Fasha said on Thursday.

According to Fasha, Legok been targeted for restoration because of its lack of educational facilities, low economic vitality and conditions that have isolated residents.

"We will start by building public bathrooms and creating green spaces there," Fasha said.

Providing education facilities would be another priority, he added, in order to eradicate illiteracy among children.

Adopted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/06/26/islands-focus-govt-allocates-rp-109b-renovate-slum-area.html> (June 27, 2015)

# Mid-Term Test 2

## LISTENING SECTION

### PART I

1. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Boy : Hey, look over there. What is in the glass case?  
Girl : It is *congklak* or dakon board game. It is made from wood.  
Boy : I see. Is that a traditional game? My grandma had told me about that.  
Girl : Yes. You're right.  
Narrator : What does the girl tell the boy about the *congklak*?

Jawaban: C

2. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : Have you ever heard about Toraja?  
Boy : It is a South Sulawesi ethnicity, right? What's the matter?  
Girl : I just read an article. You know, in Toraja society, the funeral ritual is the most elaborate and expensive event.  
Boy : Yup! That's why the ceremony is often held for weeks, months or years after the death so that the deceased's family can raise the significant funds needed to cover the funeral expenses.  
Narrator : What do the speakers talk about?

Jawaban: C

3. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Boy : The Minister of Energy and Mineral Resources will be coming here to check the electricity problems.  
Girl : Where did you get the news from?  
Boy : From the internet. The President said that he would also instruct the minister to build a new steam-fueled power plant (PLTU).  
Girl : That sounds great. I hope the electricity problems here will be resolved soon.  
Narrator : What will the minister visit the speakers' regency for?

Jawaban: E

4. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : The International Science Project Olympiad will arrive soon.  
Boy : When will it officially be opened?  
Girl : Next Monday. The committee said that the number of participants this year is higher than last year's event.

- Boy : That's true. I heard that young scientists from 31 countries will participate.  
Narrator : How many countries will participate in the competition?

Jawaban: B

### PART II

5. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

- Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Girl : This museum displays many statues.  
Boy : The statues depict characters from ancient Indonesian myth.  
Girl : You're right. Anyway, do you know how they were made?  
Boy : \_\_\_\_\_  
Narrator : Which is the best response?  
A. The rocks were carved to create statues.  
B. The statues teach us about history.  
C. The history of the statues was complicated.  
D. The carving stones will be historical evidence.

Jawaban: A

6. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

- Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Boy : I heard the news on the television that the Defense and Health Ministers signed a cooperation agreement to prevent the outbreak of infectious diseases.  
Girl : What will they do about their project?  
Boy : They will certify health facilities and infrastructure.  
Girl : \_\_\_\_\_  
Narrator : Which is the best response?  
A. I don't think it's good cooperation.  
B. The project had been done successfully.  
C. I am sure that the public health will worsen.  
D. I hope the cooperation will improve public health.

Jawaban: D

7. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

- Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Boy : Why do you look so sad?  
Girl : My favorite band, Maroon 5, cancelled their concert next September.  
Boy : Really? Where did you get the news from?  
Girl : \_\_\_\_\_  
Narrator : Which is the best response?

- A. I will buy a ticket for you.
- B. The event organizer announced on its website.
- C. The tickets were sold via online.
- D. The concert has been waited for by many people.

**Jawaban: B**

**PART III**

8. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
*Labuhan ceremony* is held to celebrate the birth of Sri Sultan Hamengku Buwono. In Javanese language, *Labuh* means 'to throw a sacred object into a river or the sea'. The offering from the Yogyakarta palace consists of food, cuttings of fingernails and the hair of Sri Sultan which are thrown into the South Sea or Indian Ocean. By performing this ceremony, the King and the people of Yogyakarta hope to stay healthy.  
 Adopted from: <http://id.indo.com/budgetyogya/tumplakwajik.html> (June 22, 2015)  
**Narrator :** In which place do they throw the sacred thing in the ceremony?

**Jawaban: B**

9. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 Ponorogo is famous as the city of reog, one of Indonesia's traditional art cultures which is the mixture of art, traditional dance and kind of mystical art. Ponorogo today is one of East Java's Cultural tourism icons. By the date of 1st Muharam of Suro, the city would have held an annual ceremony called Grebeg Ponorogo Suro, which is also the day of Ponorogo's anniversary.  
 According to the tradition and ceremony from the Ponorogo cultural site, they usually have their own characteristics to be shown at their performance, like the uniform, the dancer, and the property. Masks are always taken to any performances and worn by the dancers to complete the whole dance.  
 Adopted from: <http://goo.gl/ackJBe> (June 22, 2015)  
**Narrator :** What property is always used in the Ponorogo traditional ceremony?

**Jawaban: A**

10. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 ANTARA News reports, the Natural Resources Conservation Agency (BKSDA) of Bengkulu has captured the Sumatran tiger (*Phantera tigris sumatrae*) that had earlier attacked a local farmer.  
 The attack had taken place in Talang Beringin village in North Seluma sub-district, Seluma district, Bengkulu province.  
 "The officers managed to catch the tiger using traps placed around the local plantation area," Head of Area II of the Bengkulu BKSDA, Darwis Saragih, said here Thursday.  
 To curb the tiger-locals issue, the authority will transport the wild animal to Bengkulu district.  
 It took three days for the officers to track and catch the tiger.  
 It was reported earlier that 53-year-old Lisman, a local farmer, was attacked by a tiger at a rubber plantation located near Kumayan hamlet on Sunday (February 22).  
 The plantation where the attack took place is located at the border of Taman Buru Semindang Bukit Kabu, which is the natural habitat of Sumatran tigers.

Dozens of families of Kumayan hamlet fled their homes to Talang Beringin village in Seluma district of Bengkulu in fear of the wandering Sumatran tiger in their neighborhood.

Adopted from: <http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/97914/bengkulus-conservation-agency-captures-sumatran-tiger> (June 22, 2015)

**Narrator :** What animal had attacked farmer in Bengkulu?

**Jawaban: E**

11. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 ANTARA News reports, Indonesia's top mens doubles players, Mohammad Ahsan and Hendra Setiawan, failed to clinch a slot in the final round of the BCA Indonesia Super Series Premier Badminton Open here on Saturday.  
 The Indonesian pair was defeated by Fu Haifeng and Zhang Nan of China in the semifinal round 20–22, 21–18, 15–21. The first set was tight with quick movements and strong smashes dominating the game. Ahsan/Hendra however had to surrender 20–22 to the Chinese in the set.  
 Tension remained high in the second set with both teams showing speed and coming up with deadly attacks combined with solid defenses. The race to accumulate points became too tight with neither side leaving a margin of more than two before Ahsan/Hendra finally finished the set in their favor 21–18.  
 In the third set, the game saw little change as both sides carried on, piling on more pressure. Just before the game ended, the Indonesians made mistakes, giving the opponents the advantage. The third set was won by Fun/Zhang 21–15.  
 Adopted from: <http://www.antaranews.com/en/news/99134/indonesia-open-ahsanhendra-fail-to-reach-finals> (June 23, 2015)  
**Narrator :** What competition did the news tell us about?

**Jawaban: D**

**PART IV**

- Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Questions 12 and 13 refer to the following monolog.**  
 Puppets have been used for centuries in Indonesia to tell stories of the ancient epics, the Ramayana and Mahabharata, as well as ancient myths. Modern stories also utilize this ancient art form for contemporary audiences.  
 Puppets fall into two major classifications; *wayang kulit*—the leather or shadow puppet of Central Java, and *wayang golek*—wooden puppets of West Java. There are several varieties of wooden puppets. Several expats enjoy collecting the same character by various artisans, or all the characters in a scene or story, or just characters that strike their fancy. Good guys, bad guys, gods, demons, nobles, giants, clowns, princes and princesses and monkeys can be found in traditional puppet forms.  
 Adopted from: <http://www.expat.or.id/info/artshandicrafts-indonesia.html> (June 23, 2015)  
**Narrator:**  
 12. How many classifications do puppets divide into?  
 13. What are the puppets of West Java made from?

12. **Jawaban: A**

13. **Jawaban: C**



**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

**Questions 14 and 15 refer to the following monolog.**

West Java Governor Ahmad Heryawan has reminded people who wish to travel the 116.75 kilometer Cikopo–Palimanan (Cipali) toll road to remain cautious.

Ever since it was inaugurated by President Joko “Jokowi” Widodo on June 13, as many as 15 traffic accidents have taken place, in which three people were killed.

“Based on our analysis, the accidents were caused by human error,” Heryawan said in Bandung on Monday.

Cirebon Regency Police chief Adj. Sr. Comr. Chiko Ardwiatto said the toll road connecting Jakarta–Cikampek and Palimanan–Kanci toll roads (part of the trans-Java toll road), was relatively straight, thus causing motorists to drive at high speed.

He added motorists should be aware of the road conditions as it has corners and uphill and downhill grades at several points.

Adopted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com/news/2015/06/23/islands-focus-governor-warns-drivers-cipali-turnpike.html> (June 23, 2015)

**Narrator:**

14. What is the monolog about?

15. How many accidents took place after the toll road was inaugurated?

14. **Jawaban: A**

15. **Jawaban: B**

**This is the end of the listening section.**

**READING SECTION**

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 16. C | 31. E | 46. B |
| 17. B | 32. A | 47. A |
| 18. B | 33. B | 48. D |
| 19. E | 34. A | 49. B |
| 20. A | 35. E | 50. B |
| 21. C | 36. C |       |
| 22. D | 37. D |       |
| 23. B | 38. E |       |
| 24. E | 39. D |       |
| 25. B | 40. A |       |
| 26. D | 41. C |       |
| 27. A | 42. A |       |
| 28. D | 43. D |       |
| 29. C | 44. B |       |
| 30. B | 45. E |       |

# UNIT XIII

## Listen to the News



### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. read and present news scripts, and
  - b. form and use a noun from a verb with suffix -ion.
2. be able to:
  - a. present news scripts, and
  - b. form and use a noun from a verb with suffix -ion.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be honest, polite, disciplined, responsible and kind to everyone, especially when communicating with others.



Tyas won the most creative young generation award. She received after participating in a creative and innovative young generation competition. She submitted a skirt, dress and coat made of plastic wraps to the committee and she won.

What Tyas did has inspired Yuda and Anneke. They are visiting her to know how she recycles unused materials into marvelous products. They learn and try to make crafts themselves. They are going to invite people in their neighborhoods to save the environment by recycling garbage.



## TASK 1

Work in groups of four.

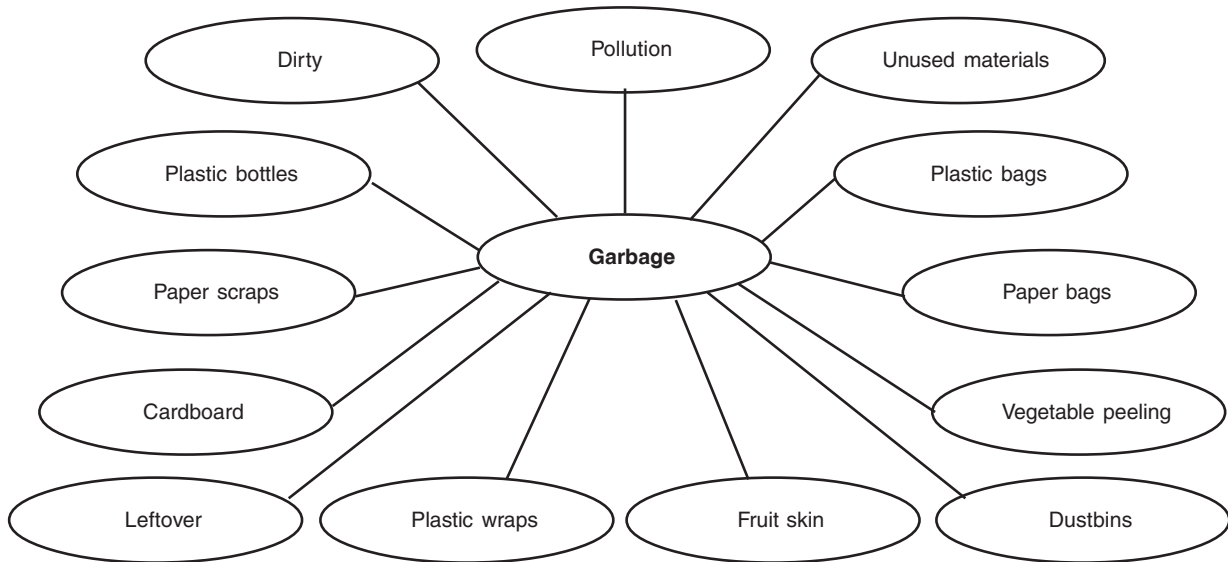
Discuss and write as many words related to garbage as you can.

### Petunjuk Guru

Kegiatan ini bertujuan meningkatkan keterampilan dan keberanian peserta didik mengungkapkan pendapat menggunakan bahasa Inggris.

1. Peserta didik diminta membuat kelompok yang terdiri atas empat orang. Mereka sebaiknya mengajak teman-teman yang duduknya berjauhan.
2. Setiap kelompok diminta menuliskan kata-kata atau frasa-frasa yang berkaitan dengan sampah. Setiap anggota kelompok sebaiknya dimintai pendapat.
3. Setelah selesai, setiap kelompok diminta membacakan hasilnya. Kelompok lain diminta menulis kata-kata atau frasa-frasa dari kelompok lain yang belum mereka tulis.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan.

Contoh jawaban:



### Variasi

Make ten sentences using the words you have written in TASK 1.

Read your sentences aloud, in turns.

Contoh jawaban:

1. Don't let your room become **dirty**.
2. Garbage can cause land and water **pollution**.
3. Do you think paper wraps are **unused materials**?
4. We should sort **plastic bottles** from other garbage before we dispose of them.
5. Let's not use **plastic bags** when we shop at markets.
6. Don't burn **paper scraps**. Bury them to make compost.
7. This **paper bag** isn't strong enough to carry those items.
8. Stack and tighten the **cardboard** with ropes. We will sell it to the trash collector.
9. Don't leave **vegetable peeling** scattered around. Put them in one bag.
10. We can find **dustbins** easily in the garden.



## TASK 2

Arrange the following jumbled letters into meaningful words based on the clues.

Read the words and find their meanings.

You will read the words in the text in TASK 3.

Jawaban:

1. material = bahan
2. designer = desainer, pencipta
3. creativity = kreativitas
4. environment = lingkungan
5. recycled = mendaur ulang
6. garbage = sampah
7. expensive = mahal
8. customer = pelanggan/pembeli
9. ordering = pesanan
10. magazine = majalah
11. potential = potensial, kemampuan
12. store = toko
13. price = harga
14. exclusive = eksklusif
15. trousers = celana panjang



### TASK 3

Read the text carefully.

Then, listen to and answer the questions orally.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik diminta membaca teks berikut dalam hati.
2. Selanjutnya, beberapa peserta didik diminta membaca teks tersebut secara bergiliran dengan suara nyaring dan dengan pelafalan yang benar. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi contoh pengucapan yang benar jika ada peserta didik yang masih mengucapkan kata-kata dengan pelafalan yang kurang tepat.
3. Setelah itu, Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan pertanyaan-pertanyaan dan peserta didik menjawabnya secara lisan dan bergiliran. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan membetulkan jawaban temannya yang dirasa kurang tepat.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai dan balikan, serta memotivasi peserta didik agar terus aktif dalam kegiatan pembelajaran.

#### Pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

1. What is the text about?
2. Why did Kristen Alyce create such interesting items?
3. With whom does Kristen Alyce create dresses?
4. What was her first creation made from?
5. Why do women like her dresses?
6. What is 'Garbage Gone Glam'?
7. What prices range are Alyce's products?
8. Suppose you and your sister order dresses with personal patterns. How much would you have to pay for them?
9. What does Alyce focus on for her sales?
10. What products does she sell for men?

#### Jawaban:

1. It is about designer Kristen Alyce, who made beautiful dresses from unused materials, such as paper, magazines, cardboard and plastic bottles.
2. Because she is concerned for her environment. She notices people littering, so she tries to reuse garbage.
3. She works with her two friends.
4. It was made from a combination of magazines and plastic bottles.
5. Because they are beautiful and unique.
6. It is the label for Alyce's products.
7. They range from US \$500 to US \$1,500.
8. I have to pay US \$4,000.
9. She focuses on selling cocktail dresses and ball gowns.
10. She sells T-shirts, shorts, jackets and trousers.



### TASK 4

Listen to the monolog and answer the questions, orally.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan monolog berikut dua kali. Peserta didik diminta menyimak dengan saksama dan mencatat kosakata baru.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru memperdengarkan sekali lagi monolog tersebut dan peserta didik menyimaknya sambil memeriksa jawaban mereka. Mereka diberi kesempatan membetulkan jawaban yang masih kurang tepat.
3. Selanjutnya, peserta didik tunjuk jari dan menjawab pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang ada secara lisan dan bergiliran. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan membetulkan jawaban temannya yang dirasa kurang tepat.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai dan balikan, serta memotivasi peserta didik agar terus aktif dalam kegiatan pembelajaran.

#### Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

Garbage is considered useless material and should be disposed. In fact, garbage can be changed into useful products and earn people money by being creative and innovative. Like what *Malaka Sari Garbage Bank* in East Jakarta is doing to a pile of garbage. The garbage deposited by customers is not only used as organic compost, but also transformed into high value handicrafts.

"Here we produce bags for portable computers, umbrellas, shopping bags, etc. The products are made from waste deposited in this garbage bank by customers," said Prakoso, *Malaka Sari Garbage Bank* initiator and chairman of the *Jakarta Aksi Lingkungan Indah*, to *Health Liputan6.com* written on Saturday. The production process, according to Prakoso, only takes two days if it is done by craftsmen. However, since the *PKK* takes part in the process, the time process is longer. "You know, the *PKK* women do not solely focus on producing the crafts. They have to cook or do the house chores before doing their jobs. On the contrary, craftsmen focus doing their jobs from morning until noon," Prakoso explained.

Finished items and products are sold or exhibited in bazaars. On the top of that, there are buyers from overseas, who buy directly from *Malaka Sari Garbage Bank*. "Yesterday there were buyers from Saudi Arabia and Pakistan. They bought umbrellas and laptop bags and paid with dollars. Not bad at all," said Prakoso proudly.

The prices are determined by the motifs and the processes, as well as additional materials used. The cheapest is Rp25 thousand, an umbrella costs Rp250 thousand, while the most expensive is the portable computer bag which costs Rp350 thousand.

It seems people's mindset create enormous piles of garbage in Indonesia. Nationally, piles of garbage accumulate to 200 thousand tons per day, equivalent to 73 million tons per year. According to Prakoso, each person produces an average of 1 kilogram of garbage every day, consisting of 17 percent of plastic waste. 67 percent is organic waste and the rest being inorganic waste. This data is taken from the results of waste composition measurement in Bantar Gebang in 2010.

Therefore, people should be wise in distinguishing organic from inorganic waste. If people are ready to sort the garbage, it could have economic value.

Translated from: <http://health.liputan6.com/read/834095/pembeli-kerajinan-sampah-malaka-sari-ada-yang-dari-arab-lho>, by Aditya Eka Prawira (June 27, 2015)

#### Jawaban:

1. It presents important news to the listeners.
2. It is about utilizing garbage.

3. It is a garbage bank located in East Jakarta.
4. It uses garbage for organic compost and high value handicrafts.
5. It produces bags for portable computers, umbrellas, shopping bags, etc.
6. The craftsmen and women who attend *PKK*.
7. Craftsmen work faster because they focus on their jobs from morning until noon.
8. The portable computer bags which cost Rp350 thousand.
9. Prakoso.
10. It is 'differentiating'.



### Variasi

Read the words in column A and match them with their synonyms in column B, correctly.  
What do those words mean?  
Memorize the words.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru menggandakan soal kosakata berikut sebanyak peserta didik. Namun, Bapak/Ibu Guru juga dapat mendiktekan kosakata berikut dan peserta didik menuliskannya di kertas soal.
2. Peserta didik melengkapi tabel dan kemudian membacakan hasilnya secara sukarela dengan tunjuk jari.
3. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak jawaban temannya dan membetulkan jawaban mereka jika kurang tepat.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai terutama kepada para peserta didik yang aktif dan memotivasi semua peserta didik agar selalu aktif dalam setiap pembelajaran.

A	B
1. alter	a. solely
2. show	b. useful
3. handy	c. initiator
4. waste	d. utilize
5. only	e. buy
6. collect	f. useless
7. exploit	g. exhibit
8. abroad	h. garbage
9. founder	i. adapt
10. worthless	j. discard
11. beneficial	k. enormous
12. purchase	l. take part
13. very large	m. transform
14. participate	n. put on
15. throw away	o. deposit
	p. overseas
	q. portable

#### Jawaban:

1. m (mengubah)
2. g (memamerkan)
3. q (mudah dibawa ke mana-mana)
4. h (sampah)
5. a (semata-mata)
6. o (mengumpulkan)
7. d (memanfaatkan)
8. p (luar negeri)
9. c (pencetus)
10. f (tidak berguna)
11. b (berguna)
12. e (membeli)
13. k (sangat banyak)
14. l (ikut ambil bagian)
15. j (membuang)



### TASK 5

Read the text and copy the nouns ending with *-ion*.  
Read the words aloud.

#### Jawaban:

1. regulations
2. appreciation
3. renovation
4. recreation
5. attractions



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Present the news in TASK 5, in turns.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik tunjuk jari dan membawakan berita pada TASK 5. Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat memberi kesempatan kepada empat atau lima peserta didik.
2. Peserta didik yang berani tunjuk jari diminta ke depan kelas dan menyampaikan berita tersebut dengan pelafalan dan intonasi yang tepat, dengan suara nyaring serta tidak tergesa-gesa. Mereka diingatkan bahwa mereka berperan sebagai seorang pembawa acara radio.
3. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan diminta memberi pendapat tentang hasil penyampaian berita oleh teman-temannya tersebut.
4. Di akhir pembelajaran ini Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi sanjungan kepada peserta didik yang berani ke depan kelas dan membawakan berita, serta kepada mereka yang berani memberi pendapat. Selanjutnya, Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan, nilai, dan motivasi.

#### TASK 2

Answer the questions based on the text in TASK 5, orally.

1. What radio station broadcasts the news?
2. Who is Sinta Laura?
3. What is the name of the program?
4. How many times is the program aired?
5. When is the program broadcast?
6. What do you think about Ridwan Kamil's actions?
7. What should not Bandung people and visitors do, to actualize Bandung a clean city?
8. What activities have been done to keep your environment clean and green?

#### Jawaban:

1. Bandung 120 FM Radio.
2. She's a broadcaster.
3. It is Bandung Today.
4. The program is aired once a day.
5. The program is broadcasted at 10 a.m.
6. What Ridwan Kamil has been doing is excellent. It shows that he does it for his people's welfare. I admire what he has done.
7. They should not litter.
8. We have planted vegetables in pots and renovated the playground.



## TASK 6

Listen and complete the text based on what you have heard.

**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru dan jawaban:**

Good morning. You still with me Yayang Nugraheni on Save the Planet Earth program. This time we will talk about useful and useless outputs. Bayu Septian joins us from outside the studio.

Bayu, please report your information in detail.

Thank you, Yayang. Listeners, now I'm standing on a hill not far from a landfill where I can see beautiful trees. Have you ever asked yourself why it is that **(1) garbage** exists in the human system but not more broadly in nature? Nature is a beautiful **(2) harmony of systems** whereby every system's output is a useful input for other systems. An **(3) acorn** that falls from a tree is an important input for a squirrel that eats it. The by-product of that delicious meal—the squirrel's poop—is an important input for the microbes that consume it. The output of the microbes—rich **(4) humus and soil**—is in turn the very material from which a new oak tree may grow. Even the carbon dioxide that the squirrel exhales is what that tree may **(5) inhale**. This cycle is the fundamental reason why life has thrived on our planet for millions of years.

Even we humans, up until about a century ago, lived our lives in the same way: all of our outputs—from the carbon we exhaled to our feces and **(6) product waste**—were cycled by nature until they became useful inputs again.

Yet today much of our waste breaks this age-old cycle by not being useful to any **(7) living organism**. In the past century, the raw materials that make up our products have changed from easily degradable animals, plants, and other natural sources to highly refined, typically **(8) non-renewable resources** (primarily oil). Today, even when we use renewable resources (like trees), we typically render them useless outputs (like a used coffee cup) that cannot be easily recycled (due to the thin plastic lining on the inside).

This transition represents the first time in history that a species has moved away from a circular material **(9) supply chain**—where every output in nature is cycled through multiple organisms until it becomes an input again—toward a linear one.

Take, for example, the plastic bag that may have been given to you when you bought a book. The useful life of a plastic bag is perhaps an hour or two—in other words, about the time it takes you to travel from the bookshop to your home. After that one trip, the bag typically ends up in your garbage on its way to the local landfill. Once at the landfill, it stays there, in several forms, virtually forever. Will we continue destroying our beautiful Earth by using undegradable materials? It's up to you.

Let's get back to Yayang in the studio. Yayang ...

Thank you, Bayu. Audience, information presented by Bayu just now is a trigger to **(10) arouse our concern** to the Earth and future generations. Let us save the Earth and future generations by utilizing degradable materials and avoid using plastic ones.

I'm Yayang Nugraheni on Save the Planet Earth program.

Join me again this evening at 5 p.m. Stay tuned!

Adapted from: <http://www.motherearthnews.com/nature-and-environment/useful-waste-ze0z1502zhur.aspx> (June 27, 2015)



## Variasi

### TASK 1

Read the words and find the meanings.

- landfill = \_\_\_\_\_
- whereby = \_\_\_\_\_
- acorn = \_\_\_\_\_

- squirrel = \_\_\_\_\_
- poop = \_\_\_\_\_
- consume = \_\_\_\_\_
- exhale = \_\_\_\_\_
- fundamental = \_\_\_\_\_
- thrive = \_\_\_\_\_
- raw material = \_\_\_\_\_
- degradable = \_\_\_\_\_
- refine = \_\_\_\_\_
- render = \_\_\_\_\_
- move away = \_\_\_\_\_
- end up = \_\_\_\_\_

### TASK 2

Answer the questions based on the text in TASK 6, orally.

- What is the text about?
- Why does Bayu report the news from a hill not far from a landfill?
- What does a beautiful harmony of systems mean?
- What is the example of a beautiful harmony of systems?
- Why do we destroy the age-old cycle in the past few years?

### TASK 3

Read the text aloud, in turns.

Then, listen to and answer the questions.

#### Petunjuk Guru

- Peserta didik diminta membaca teks dalam hati sambil menggarisbawahi kosakata baru.
- Selanjutnya, beberapa peserta didik diminta membaca teks tersebut secara bergiliran dengan suara nyaring dan dengan pelafalan serta intonasi yang benar. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi contoh pengucapan yang benar jika ada peserta didik yang masih mengucapkan kata-kata dengan pelafalan yang kurang tepat.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik bersama-sama mencari arti kosakata baru yang telah digaris bawahi. Beberapa peserta didik yang sudah tahu makna kosakata yang digarisbawahi oleh temannya diminta menyebutkan artinya. Selanjutnya, peserta didik diminta menghafalkannya.
- Beberapa peserta didik diminta membaca teks dengan suara nyaring, pelafalan dan intonasi yang tepat, secara bergiliran.
- Setelah itu, Bapak/Ibu Guru membacakan pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang tersedia dua kali. Peserta didik diminta menyimak dan menjawabnya secara lisan dan bergiliran. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan membetulkan jawaban temannya yang dirasa kurang tepat.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi nilai dan balikan, serta memotivasi peserta didik agar terus aktif dalam kegiatan pembelajaran.

I'm Gilang Santana on Breaking News at 5 p.m.

There has been a huge fire in Griya Puspita Asri housing estate. Approximately ten houses were burned down. The fire was thought to be caused by garbage burning. Report in details will be delivered by Diana Dewi from the spot. Please Diana.

Thank you, Gilang. Listeners, there has been a fire that destroyed approximately ten houses in Griya Puspita Asri housing estate. Fire started at 3 p.m. Sparks appeared from the garbage burning carried out by one of the residents. Losses estimated to be billions of Rupiah. Victims who lost their houses and belongings are crying and look depressed.

They claim that none of their assets were saved, including important documents. They are confused about how to get their documents back.

The Village Chief and District officers have set up a temporary evacuation, while the Red Cross, neighbors and donors have worked together to help alleviate the burden of the victims by providing food and drink. The victims hope the government is willing to help them rebuild their houses.

Gilang, back to you in the studio.

Thank you Diana.

Listeners, waste burning not only causes air pollution that can cause various diseases, but also causes fire. In fact, garbage burning has been prohibited. Hopefully we can learn from this incident.

I'm Gilang Santana. We will meet again in *Breaking News* at 7 p.m.

**Pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang dibacakan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

1. What is the text called?
2. What is the purpose of the text?
3. What is the name of the program?
4. When is it delivered?
5. Who is the broadcaster and the reporter?
6. What is the news about?
7. How many families lost their homes?
8. How did the incident happen?
9. What have the government and people done for the victims?
10. What can you learn from the incident?

**TASK 4**

*Listen to the text and answer the questions.*

**Teks yang dibacakan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

Good morning. I'm Renald Umbro from Inspiring People on Universal 101 FM radio. Today we will talk about Tom Szaky who changed garbage into money. We will listen to Tony who is with Tom now. Tony, time is yours.

Thank you, Renald. Listeners, let me introduce you to Tom Szaky. He talks 19 to the dozen. It's as if he doesn't want to waste a single minute of this hour-long interview with me, but then waste is a subject dear to his heart. He is the founder and chief executive of social enterprise TerraCycle, a company whose aim is eliminating waste.

"It's a lofty ideal I know," he says, but so far so good.

In 13 years, US-based TerraCycle has gone from a classic start-up run out of a basement to operating in 21 countries. Last year it had a revenue worth \$20m and 115 employees.

The company's business aim is to find waste and turn it into useful items, for a profit. It collects items that are generally considered difficult to recycle—such as cigarette stubs, coffee capsules, or biscuit wrappers—and Tom finds a way to reuse them.

That is done mainly through processing them down into a material and selling them to a manufacturer and to a lesser extent, by turning them into products such as bags, benches or dustbins.

It relies on contracts with businesses—such as McVities, Johnson & Johnson and Kenco—that pay TerraCycle to take away their waste, as well as individual consumers collecting and handing it in, in return for donations to a charity of their choice.

Listeners, TerraCycle was set up in 2002 after Tom, then 19, dropped out of Princeton University in New Jersey to develop an idea he had—much to the chagrin of his parents, who strongly believed in the importance of his education.

"Yeah, it was one of those moments where the child tells the parents this is my life and I shall do as I wish. A breakthrough moment in that sense," he acknowledges.

I'm Tony. We'll return to the studio with Renald.

Thank you, Tony. Audience, the first product that TerraCycle made was an organic fertilizer created from "worm poop". Within five years, the firm had sales of around \$3m to \$4m .... I hope you enjoyed the program and learned from it. I'm Renald Umbro and please join Inspiring People again tomorrow at the same time.

Adapted from: <http://www.bbc.com/news/business-31036601>, by Emily Young, BBC News (June 27, 2015)

1. What is the name of the program?
2. What radio broadcasts the program?
3. Who is Tom Szaky?
4. What is the aim of his company?
5. When was the company founded?
6. What revenue did it receive last year?
7. What is 'm' in its revenue derived from?
8. How many people work for him?
9. How does the company get its materials?
10. What items has the company produced?

**Jawaban:**

**TASK 1**

1. tempat pembuangan akhir (sampah)
2. untuk
3. biji pohon ek
4. tupai
5. kotoran
6. memakan
7. menghembuskan nafas
8. sangat penting, mendasar
9. berkembang, tumbuh dengan subur
10. bahan mentah
11. dapat diurai
12. menyuling, membersihkan
13. menjadikan
14. pindah
15. berakhir

**TASK 2**

1. It is about save the Earth.
2. He tries to give actual and factual information about the news.
3. It means every system's output is a useful input for other systems.
4. An acorn that falls from a tree is an important input for a squirrel that eats it. The by-product of that delicious meal—the squirrel's poop—is an important input for the microbes that consume it. The output of the microbes—rich humus and soil—is in turn the very material from which a new oak tree may grow.
5. Because we use renewable resources (like trees) and we typically render them useless outputs (like a used coffee cup) that cannot be easily recycled (due to the thin plastic lining on the inside).

**TASK 3**

1. It is a news item.
2. The purpose is to present newsworthy or important news.
3. Breaking News.
4. It is delivered at 5 p.m.

- Gilang Santana is the broadcaster and Diana Dewi is the reporter.
- It is about a huge fire in Griya Puspita Asri housing estate.
- Approximately ten families lost their homes.
- A person was burning garbage and sparks hit the houses.
- They have provided the victims with an evacuation place, food and drink.
- We should not burn garbage, carelessly.

#### TASK 4

- It is Inspiring People.
- Universal 101 FM radio.
- He is the man who has changed garbage into money and the founder and chief executive of social enterprise TerraCycle.
- The aim is to eliminate waste.
- It was founded in 2002.
- It received \$20m.
- It is derived from million.
- 115 employees work for him.
- Businesses, such as McVities, Johnson & Johnson and Kenco pay TerraCycle to take away their waste, as well as individual consumers collecting and handing it in.
- The products were bags, benches, dustbins and an organic fertilizer created from "worm poop".



#### TASK 7

Listen and write down the sentences you have heard. Underline the nouns ending with *-ion*.

#### Kalimat-kalimat yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

- We have to work together to solve this obstruction.
- The Student Association will hold an English debate contest next month.
- Birds or fish migration is a natural phenomenon.
- Yuda has finished his translation assignment and he is checking his work at the moment.
- Rianti shows her shoe collection to her cousin.
- What is your prediction for the final round of the football match?
- Many people admire the artistic creations of *Malaka Sari* and decide to buy them.
- I hope the negotiation between Tyas and Arum will succeed and bring a good result to all of us.
- Don't you want to discuss about the corrections I did on your work, Anneke?
- Students' obligation is to study well.

#### Jawaban:

- We have to work together to solve this obstruction.
- The Student's Association will hold an English debate contest next month.
- Birds or fish migration is a natural phenomenon.
- Yuda has finished his translation assignment and he is checking his work at the moment.
- Rianti shows her shoe collection to her cousin.
- What is your prediction for the final round of the football match?
- Many people admire the artistic creations of *Malaka Sari* and decide to buy them.
- I hope the negotiation between Tyas and Arum will succeed and bring a good result to all of us.
- Don't you want to discuss about the corrections I did on your work, Anneke?
- Students' obligation is to study well.



#### TASK 8

Make sentences using the nouns ending with *-ion* in TASK 7.

#### Contoh jawaban:

- We don't consider this **obstruction** complicated. We can solve it immediately.
- Congratulations! You are appointed the treasurer of the Student's **Association**.
- Do you know what **migration** means?
- Have you ever read the **translation** of this masterpiece?
- My father has thousands of stamp **collections**. Let me show you them later.
- Your **prediction** has come true and it's raining now.
- Many artistic **creations** from disabled people amaze able-bodied people.
- Mr. Ridwan is a great negotiator. None of his **negotiations** fail.
- We learn a lot of things from our teachers' **corrections**. Thank you, teachers!
- It's my **obligation** to study hard for the national exams.



#### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Change the verbs into nouns ending with *-ion*. Read your work aloud, in turns.

No.	Verb	Noun
1.	contribute	_____
2.	express	_____
3.	suggest	_____
4.	regulate	_____
5.	participate	_____
6.	substitute	_____
7.	renovate	_____
8.	elect	_____
9.	possess	_____
10.	discuss	_____

#### TASK 2

Complete the sentences with the suitable nouns ending with *-ion* from TASK 1.

Read the sentences aloud.

- Yuda and his friends ended the \_\_\_\_\_ a few minutes ago.
- The principal and teachers support our \_\_\_\_\_ in the pop song contest next month.
- The house \_\_\_\_\_ has been done approximately for two months.
- Have you paid the \_\_\_\_\_ fee to the clerk at the front desk?
- The students participate in the OSIS chair's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Look at your \_\_\_\_\_ in this photo.
- Mr. Hanan lost all his \_\_\_\_\_ in the fire.
- Sorry, I can't accept your \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do you think Coach BM will do a \_\_\_\_\_ before half time?
- We have to obey the \_\_\_\_\_ in this camp site.



### TASK 3

Write ten nouns ending with suffix *-ion*.  
Read your words aloud, in turns.

### TASK 4

Swap your work in TASK 3 with your friend's sitting in front of you.

Make sentences using the nouns from your friend's work.  
Read your work aloud, in turns.

Jawaban:

#### TASK 1

No.	Verb	Noun
1.	contribute	contribution
2.	express	expression
3.	suggest	suggestion
4.	regulate	regulation
5.	participate	participation
6.	substitute	substitution
7.	renovate	renovation
8.	elect	election
9.	possess	possession
10.	discuss	discussion

#### TASK 2

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. discussion   | 2. participation |
| 3. renovation   | 4. contribution  |
| 5. election     | 6. expression    |
| 7. possessions  | 8. suggestion    |
| 9. substitution | 10. regulations  |

#### TASK 3 (Contoh jawaban)

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. illustration  | 2. connection    |
| 3. collaboration | 4. relation      |
| 5. revision      | 6. communication |
| 7. complication  | 8. reaction      |
| 9. education     | 10. exception    |

#### TASK 4

1. Bayu, you're very good at drawing. Would you give **illustrations** to my short story, please?
2. Please check your internet **connection** before browsing.
3. The **collaboration** between traditional and modern music instruments produce an excellent musical orchestra.
4. The students must be aware about the **relation** between their English skills and future lives.
5. The students have to finish their **revisions** before the end of this week.
6. We have to establish **communication** with our brothers and sisters around Indonesia.
7. There is a **complication** concerning land acquisition for the highway construction.
8. What are your parents' **reactions** after knowing of your best achievement?
9. We must prioritize our **education**, mustn't we?
10. There are no **exceptions** for all people before the law.



### TASK 9

Read the text and complete the statements that follow.

Jawaban:

1. deliver important news
2. Nathan Devine
3. inspire and challenge people to think about how we can reuse waste in creative and innovative way
4. he would pull useful things from the trash, fix and resell them
5. designers and artists from 20 countries around the world



### Variasi

Complete the text with the correct words from the box.

- |              |                |                  |
|--------------|----------------|------------------|
| a. injuries  | b. killed      | c. survive       |
| d. hot ash   | e. announced   | f. faces         |
| g. violent   | h. danger zone | i. uninhabitable |
| j. destroyed | k. ran away    | l. air           |
| m. prone     |                |                  |

One of the most active volcanoes in the world could be on the verge of a **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_ eruption, but thousands of people living nearby are refusing to leave their homes.

Mount Sinabung, one of about 130 active volcanoes in Indonesia, has been at the highest alert level for nearly two weeks. On Tuesday, at least 48 avalanches of **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_ barreled down the slopes, with the largest reaching 2.5 kilometers (1.5 miles) southeastwards. The volcano in northern Sumatra, one of Indonesia's main islands, has also been spewing smoke and ash more than 700 meters high (2,300 feet) into the **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_.

Several thousands of people, including women carrying babies in slings, have left the mountain in police trucks since Monday after the volcanic activity intensified over the weekend. Other streamed down the scorched slopes on motorcycles, their **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_ caked in ash.

However, Subur Tambun, who heads the local disaster mitigation agency, said only 10,000 of about 33,000 people living within the main **(5)** \_\_\_\_\_ have moved into tented camps or government buildings a safe distance from the volcano. No **(6)** \_\_\_\_\_ have been reported from the recent eruptions.

"The villagers insisted on tending crops," Tambun said. "They are confident of being able to escape a major eruption. All we can do is ask them to leave."

The 2,460-meter (8,070-foot) Mount Sinabung has erupted sporadically since 2010, when it caught scientists off guard and erupted after being quiet for four centuries. Last year, a powerful explosion heard hundreds of kilometers (miles) away **(7)** \_\_\_\_\_ villages around its slopes and killed at least 17 people. For days, authorities have pleaded with villagers in the main danger zone, which stretches 7 kilometers (4 miles) to the south and southeast of the peak, to move to temporary shelters, but have faced resistance.

"We have lost our vegetables, but not coffee," said Sapta Sembiring Palawi from Gambir village, about 4.7 kilometers (3 miles) from the smoldering peak. "Coffee has let us **(8)** \_\_\_\_\_ and we have to take care of it now." Palawi, a grandfather, is one of about 200 people from the village who has refused to move to government shelters.

The reluctance of people to leave their homes despite danger is common in the sprawling archipelago nation. It has more volcanoes than any other country and is (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to volcanic eruptions and earthquakes because of its location in the "Ring of Fire"—a series of fault lines stretching from the Western Hemisphere through Japan and Southeast Asia.

More than 150,000 people live along the slopes of Mount Sinabung, take advantage of its fertile soil to grow chillies, oranges, cocoa and coffee.

Despite warnings, several evacuees returned home Tuesday to tend their crops and livestock. "We are worried, but we have to see to our houses and to clean up the ash from our farms," said Yapti Sitepu, who was evacuated to a temporary shelter on Monday.

More than 2,000 people forced to move by last year's eruption are still living in temporary houses rented by the government while they wait for permanent relocation. Their villages are now (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

Adopted from: <http://www.weather.com/news/indonesia-mountain-sinabung-powerful-eruption-possible> (June 29, 2015)

**Jawaban:**

1. g    2. d    3. l    4. f    5. h  
6. a    7. j    8. c    9. m    10. i



**TASK 10**

*In pairs, ask and answer questions about the text in TASK 9.*

**Contoh jawaban:**

- You : Let's make a toss to decide who will start asking questions.  
Your friend : O.K. One, two, three ... Oh gosh, you win!  
You : Great! Before we start, we should make a deal on the rule. Each of us asks two questions in each round. Deal?  
Your friend : Deal!  
You : O.K., let's begin. Where does Devine come from? Show proof.  
Your friend : He's from Australia. It is mentioned in the sentence "As an Australian kid during the '80s, Devine helped his dad in his landscaping and carpentry business, ..."  
You : Excellent! What did Devine's father do?  
Your friend : He ran a landscaping and carpentry business.  
You : Correct! Your turn, please.  
Your friend : Err ... what is Devine's favorite job?  
You : His favorite job was going to the garbage dump.  
Your friend : That's it. Well, what did he do there?  
You : He would pull useful things from the trash, fix and resell them.  
Your friend : That's right!



**TASK 11**

*Read the news carefully. Act like a radio broadcaster and present the news using your own words.*

**Contoh jawaban:**

Good evening, listeners. You are still with me, Ayu Matilda from Superb 105.1 FM Radio. Here's the breaking news at 7 p.m. Dear listeners, I've just received good news from Australia where AASAM a shooting competition was held. You must be curious, mustn't you? Let's listen to Eka Pradipta's report from the spot.

Thank you, Ayu. I'm Eka Pradipta reports from Australia. The Indonesian Army made Indonesia proud at the annual shooting competition held by the Australian military. Again, the team won the Australian Army Skill at Arms Meeting (AASAM) and it means the Army won for the eighth consecutive year.

AASAM is a shooting competition organized by the Australian Army which aims at measuring their army's shooting skills (Marksmanship). The Australian Army invited participants from the Asia-Pacific regions and European countries as well as the Commonwealth, including the Indonesian Army contingent.

The competition which was first held in 2009 consisting of four categories of competition; namely Open Sniper Competition, The Champion Shot of the Army, Individual and Team events and the international competition.

Prior to the competition with the format and name AASAM, the Australian Army had held a similar competition named The Champion Shots Medal. The competition consisting of three shoot categories was also attended by teams from other countries.

The recent AASAM was held from 2 May 2 until May 23, 2015 in Puckapunyal, Victoria, Australia. The Indonesian Army contingent beat 16 teams from 14 countries. The Indonesian team collected 30 gold, 16 silver and 10 bronze medals. While the host, the Australia team, only collected 4 gold, 7 silver and 5 bronze medals. The United States must be satisfied with being in the top three. The Indonesian team accomplishments far exceeded the performances of the competitors from other countries. What a marvelous achievement!

Listen to what Brigadier General Wuryanto, the Head of Information Department, said. "This is the 8th time in a row we won the competition."

Reporting from Kostrad Information, the Indonesian Army team was composed of 21 people, included officers or shooters from the Army as well as technicians from PT Pindad. During the competition, the Indonesian Army team used four types of weapons, namely SS-2 V-4 Heavy Barrel rifle and G-2 (Elite & Combat) pistol made by PT Pindad, SO-Minimi rifle made in Belgium, GPMG (General Purpose Machine Gun) rifle made in Belgium and AW sniper weapon made in England.

Not only was it team category, but also individual category held in this competitions. For the individual category, the award was given to Lt. Inf Safrin Sihombing (Kopassus), Second Sergeant Misran (Kostrad), Second Sergeant Kelvin (Kostrad) and Second Sergeant Woli Hamsan (Kostrad).

The interesting thing was that the Australian and US teams 'did not recognize' the Indonesian Army team's victory. They even asked for Pindad's rifles and guns used by gunners from Indonesia, to be dismantled.

Wuryanto explained, "There was an effort to tackle our victory. They asked for our weapons to be checked and dismantled during the competitions."

Well listeners, let's return to Ayu in the studio.

Thank you, Eka. Listeners, we must be proud of the Army. They had done their best to prove that they are skillful and hard to defeat. Bravo Indonesian Army and the Armed Forces!

I'm Ayu Matilda will return in an hour from now. Stay tuned with us on Superb 105.1 FM Radio.



**TASK 13**

*Read the song lyrics. What is the message?*

**Contoh jawaban:**

The message of the song is that the process of waiting is not a short climb. It's a patient, long and testing time. In a young person's career, you're waiting for things to happen, knowing that it will when it all needs to.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. C   2. B   3. A   4. A   5. D  
6. C   7. E   8. E   9. B   10. A

B. Make five sentences using nouns ending with suffix *-ion*.

**Contoh jawaban:**

1. Based on my **calculation**, our first revenue will reach two hundreds million Rupiah!
2. The room **decoration** is awesome.
3. Many Indonesian scientists do a lot of **inventions** in the field of energy sources.
4. The audience gave a standing ovation after Marlo performed his best **attraction**.
5. Many supermarkets hold **promotion** programs during holidays.

# UNIT XIV

## How to Make ...

### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. identify the structure, social function and linguistic features of a procedural text (recipe),
  - b. write a procedural text (recipe) according to the structure, social function and linguistic features.
2. be able to:
  - a. identify the structure, social function and linguistic features of a procedural text (recipe),
  - b. write a procedural text (recipe) according to the structure, social function and linguistic features.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be disciplined, polite, cooperative and communicate with others confidently.



Look at the picture carefully. What are there on the table? What do you think will be done with them? If you like cooking or baking, you will know the items in the picture very well. Tell me, what's your favorite dish or cake? Can you cook or bake it yourself? Tell the class about the recipe that you know.

Now, in this unit, you will learn how to tell others about a recipe. Study the information provided and attempt all the tasks attentively.



### TASK 1

Match each verb with the suitable noun to make meaningful phrases or collocations.

What are the meanings of the phrases or collocations?

Jawaban:

Phrase/Collocation	Meaning
1. follow the steps	mengikuti langkah/cara
2. chop the meat	mencincang daging
3. peel the apple	mengupas apel
4. stir the soup	mengaduk sup
5. flatten the dough	menipiskan adonan
6. crack the eggs	memecahkan telur
7. pour cold water	menuangkan air dingin
8. remove the pan	mengangkat/memindahkan penggorengan
9. whisk the eggs and sugar	mengocok telur dan gula
10. heat the oven	memanaskan oven



### Variasi

Make sentences using the phrases or collocations in TASK 1.

Contoh jawaban:

- This is a recipe for banana cake. You only need to **follow the steps** sequentially.
- If you don't have a chopper, just **chop the meat** with a sharp knife.
- Please **peel the apples** to make an apple pie.
- Could you **stir the soup** while I am frying the chicken?
- Flatten the dough** and mold it into various shapes.
- Please **crack the eggs** and separate the yolks from the white.
- Pour cold water** into the glass carefully.
- The fried rice is done, please **remove the pan** from the stove.
- I need a mixer to **whisk the eggs and sugar** so they will combine well.
- To make this cake, you need to **heat the oven** for 15 minutes.



### TASK 2

Listen and repeat.

What is the text about?

#### Petunjuk Guru

- Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menutup bukunya.
- Bapak/Ibu Guru membacakan teks berikut dan peserta didik menyimak.
- Sambil menyimak, peserta didik mencatat kata-kata penting. Mereka juga diminta mengamati pelafalan kata-kata yang diucapkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru.
- Setelah selesai membaca, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menyebutkan kata-kata kunci yang mereka catat beserta artinya.
- Kemudian, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menjelaskan isi teks yang disimaknya secara singkat.

6. Selanjutnya, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membuka bukunya, lalu mendiskusikan jawaban mereka.

7. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca nyaring teks tersebut dengan lafal, tekanan, dan intonasi yang benar, secara bergantian. Bapak/Ibu Guru membetulkan pelafalan peserta didik yang kurang tepat.

Jawaban:

The text is a procedure for making pancakes.



### TASK 3

Find the synonyms of the following words in the text in TASK 2. What are their meanings?

Jawaban:

Greeting	Synonym	Meaning
1. exquisite	delicate	halus
2. center	middle	tengah
3. stable	steady	stabil
4. smooth	plain	halus
5. turn over	flip	membalik
6. covered	coated	dilapisi, ditutupi
7. at once	immediately	dengan segera
8. liquefied	melted	meleleh, mencair
9. softly	lightly	dengan tipis
10. roughly	approximately	kira-kira



### Variasi

Find the meanings of the following words.

- unsalted butter = \_\_\_\_\_
- a pinch of = \_\_\_\_\_
- medium-sized = \_\_\_\_\_
- to swirl = \_\_\_\_\_
- steady stream = \_\_\_\_\_
- to set aside = \_\_\_\_\_
- batter = \_\_\_\_\_
- to grease = \_\_\_\_\_
- evenly = \_\_\_\_\_
- to freckle = \_\_\_\_\_
- gradually = \_\_\_\_\_
- lacy = \_\_\_\_\_
- palette knife = \_\_\_\_\_
- used up = \_\_\_\_\_
- baking parchment = \_\_\_\_\_

Jawaban:

- mentega tawar
- sejumput
- berukuran sedang
- mengaduk
- aliran yang stabil
- menyisihkan
- adonan kue
- melumasi
- dengan rata
- muncul bintik-bintik
- secara berangsur-angsur
- menyerupai renda
- pisau aduk
- habis
- kertas perkamen untuk memanggang



## TASK 4

Listen and answer the questions you have heard based on the text in TASK 2.

**Pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

1. What is the purpose of the text?
2. How many ingredients are prepared? What are they?
3. Why do we prepare a little extra of unsalted butter?
4. What is the first step to make the pancakes?
5. How do we pour the mixture of milk and water into the flour?
6. How long should we rest the batter?
7. What do we do after the batter has been rested?
8. What should be done before pouring the batter into the pan?
9. When should we slide the pancake out of the pan?
10. What should be put between the slices of pancakes?

**Jawaban:**

1. To instruct us on how to make pancakes through a sequence of actions or steps.
2. There are 5 ingredients: plain flour, whole milk, water, eggs and unsalted butter.
3. To grease the pan.
4. Sift the flour with a pinch of salt into a medium-sized bowl and drill a well in the middle.
5. We should pour it in a steady stream.
6. For 30 minutes.
7. We whisk the melted butter into the batter.
8. We should lightly grease the pan with melted butter.
9. When one side is golden and the other side freckles.
10. Baking parchments.



## TASK 5

Listen and complete the following text based on what you have heard.

Read your work aloud.

**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru dan jawaban:**

Do you like cakes and chocolate? If you do, then you'd like this recipe. It is a basic **(1) chocolate cake**. Since it is a basic cake, you can add any toppings, like fruits and whipped cream.

To make the cake, you need several ingredients. They are cooking sprays, 1 cup of **(2) unsweetened** cocoa powder, 2½ cups of all-purpose flour, 2 cups of sugar, 1½ teaspoons of baking powder, 1 teaspoon of baking soda, 1 teaspoon of salt, **(3) 3 large eggs**, at room temperature, ¾ cup of vegetable oil, ½ cup of sour cream, 2 teaspoons of vanilla extract and 1½ cups of boiling water.

Now, let's start making the cake. First, preheat the oven to 350°F. Coat two 9-inch-round cake pans with cooking spray and line the bottoms with **(4) parchment paper**.

Second, whisk the cocoa powder and 1½ cups of boiling water in a **(5) medium-sized** bowl until smooth, then set aside. After that, whisk the flour, sugar, baking powder, baking soda and salt in a large bowl until combined. Then, add the eggs, vegetable oil, sour cream and vanilla extract and beat with a mixer on **(6) medium speed** until smooth, around 1 minute. Reduce the mixer speed to low, beat in the cocoa mixture in a steady stream until just combined, then finish mixing with **(7) a rubber spatula**. The batter will be thin.

Third, divide the batter between the prepared pans and tap the pans against the counter to help the batter settle. Bake until **(8) a toothpick** inserted into the middle comes out clean, around 30 to 40 minutes. After that, transfer to racks and let cool around **(9) 10 minutes**, then run a knife around the edge of the pans

and turn the cakes out onto the racks to cool completely. Finally, remove the parchment. Trim the tops of the cakes with a long **(10) serrated knife** to make them level, if desired. The basic chocolate cake is baked!

So, would you like to try to make it at home?

Adopted from: <http://www.foodnetwork.com/recipes/food-network-kitchens/basic-chocolate-cake-recipe.html> (June 26, 2015)



## TASK 6

Complete the following statements based on the text in TASK 5.

**Jawaban:**

1. twelve (12)
2. cooking sprays, unsweetened cocoa powder, all-purpose flour, sugar, baking powder, baking soda, salt, eggs, vegetable oil, sour cream, vanilla extract and boiling water.
3. to preheat the oven to 350°F
4. coated with cooking spray and its bottoms lined with parchment paper
5. whisk the flour, sugar, baking powder, baking soda and salt in a large bowl until combined
6. a steady stream
7. help the batter settle
8. a toothpick inserted into the middle comes out clean
9. remove the parchment from the pans
10. trim the tops of the cakes, to make them level



## Variasi

### TASK 1

Listen and complete the following text based on what you have heard.

**Teks yang dibacakan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

Let's make teriyaki salmon rice bowls. The recipe is quite **(1) simple and easy**. The recipe is for four servings.

To make the dish, we need 2½ tablespoons of extra-virgin **(2) olive oil**, 1 red bell pepper which is thinly sliced, 4 salmon fillets, ½ teaspoon of salt, ¼ teaspoon of **(3) black pepper**, ¼ cup lower-sodium teriyaki sauce, 2 pouches of precooked brown rice and 2 sliced **(4) green onions**.

Now, let's begin to cook. First, heat a medium **(5) skillet** over medium-high heat and add **(6) 1½ teaspoons** of olive oil. Then, saute bell pepper slices for 2 minutes. Remove the bell pepper from the pan; **(7) set aside**.

Second, add remaining 1 tablespoon of oil to the pan. Add the salmon fillets which were previously **(8) sprinkled** with salt and pepper; cook for 3 minutes. Turn salmon and brush with 2 tablespoons of teriyaki sauce. Cook for 3 minutes.

Third, prepare rice according to package directions and cook.

Finally, divide the **(9) cooked rice** into 4 bowls. Top each with bell pepper slices and 1 salmon fillet; sprinkle the remaining 2 tablespoons of teriyaki sauce over the rice bowls. Sprinkle with onions. Umm, yummy!

Please **(10) have a try!**

Adopted from: <http://www.myrecipes.com/recipe/teriyaki-salmon-rice-bowls> (June 28, 2015)

**Soal yang dikerjakan oleh peserta didik:**

Let's make teriyaki salmon rice bowls. The recipe is quite (1) \_\_\_\_\_. The recipe is for four servings.

To make the dish, we need 2½ tablespoons of extra-virgin (2) \_\_\_\_\_, 1 red bell pepper which is thinly sliced, 4 salmon fillets, ½ teaspoon of salt, ¼ teaspoon of (3) \_\_\_\_\_, ¼ cup lower-sodium teriyaki sauce, 2 pouches of precooked brown rice and 2 sliced (4) \_\_\_\_\_.

Now, let's begin to cook. First, heat a medium (5) \_\_\_\_\_ over medium-high heat and add (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of olive oil. Then, saute bell pepper slices for 2 minutes. Remove the bell pepper from the pan; (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

Second, add remaining 1 tablespoon of oil to the pan. Add the salmon fillets which were previously (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with salt and pepper; cook for 3 minutes. Turn salmon and brush with 2 tablespoons of teriyaki sauce. Cook for 3 minutes.

Third, prepare rice according to package directions and cook.

Finally, divide the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ into 4 bowls. Top each with bell pepper slices and 1 salmon fillet; sprinkle the remaining 2 tablespoons of teriyaki sauce over the rice bowls. Sprinkle with onions. Umm, yummy!

Please (10) \_\_\_\_\_!

**TASK 2**

Complete the following statements based on the text in TASK 1.

1. The procedure is about \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We need to slice these ingredients: \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Paragraph two explains about \_\_\_\_\_.
4. We use teriyaki sauce which contains \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We saute bell paper over \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Before sauting, the salmon fillets should be \_\_\_\_\_.
7. We need to saute the salmon fillets for around \_\_\_\_\_.
8. After topping each rice bowl with bell pepper slices and 1 salmon fillet, we should \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The final step for making the dish is \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The recipe is to serve \_\_\_\_\_.

**Jawaban:**

**TASK 1**

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. simple and easy | 2. olive oil    |
| 3. black pepper    | 4. green onions |
| 5. skillet         | 6. 1½ teaspoons |
| 7. set aside       | 8. sprinkled    |
| 9. cooked rice     | 10. have a try  |

**TASK 2**

1. making teriyaki salmon rice bowls
2. bell pepper; green onions
3. the ingredients to make teriyaki salmon rice bowls
4. lower sodium
5. medium-high heat

6. sprinkled with salt and pepper
7. 3 minutes
8. sprinkle the remaining 2 tablespoons of teriyaki sauce over bowls
9. sprinkle the teriyaki salmon rice bowls with the slices of green onions
10. four people



**TASK 8**

Copy the text in TASK 7.

Underline the verbs base of the imperative sentences used in the text.

Circle the time sequencers.

**Petunjuk Guru**

1. Peserta didik menyalin teks yang ada di TASK 7.
2. Peserta didik diminta menggarisbawahi kata-kata kerja dasar dalam kalimat-kalimat perintah yang terdapat dalam teks tersebut.
3. Setelah waktu yang ditentukan habis, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta beberapa peserta didik menyampaikan hasil pekerjaan mereka.
4. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan menyampaikan jawabannya apabila berbeda dengan jawaban temannya.
5. Sebagai kegiatan pengembangan, peserta didik diminta menyebutkan kosakata baru dan saling menjelaskan arti kata-kata tersebut.

**Jawaban:**

**How to Make Passionfruit-Glazed Lemon Curd Sponge Cake**

To make the cake, you need to prepare the following:

- 1 × 460g pkt Double Unfilled Sponge Cake
- 125ml (½ cup) thickened cream
- 2 tablespoons lemon curd
- 80g (½ cup) icing sugar mixture
- 1 tablespoon canned passionfruit pulp

Let's make the cake.

First, use a serrated knife to trim the side of each sponge cake to form a square. Cut each cake into 4 squares, then cut each square in half horizontally. Divide the bases among serving plates.

Second, use a balloon whisk to whisk the cream in a bowl until firm peaks form.

Third, spread the lemon curd over the cut side of each cake base. After that, top with the cream and remaining cake.

Fourth, sift the icing sugar into a small bowl. Then, add the passionfruit pulp and stir until well combined.

Spread over the top of the cakes, allowing a little to run over the sides. Finally, serve immediately.



## TASK 9

Work in pairs.

Ask and answer questions about the recipe in TASK 7, in turns.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Peserta didik membentuk pasangan dengan temannya.
2. Setiap pasangan membaca dan memahami kembali resep pada TASK 7.
3. Setelah itu, setiap pasangan melakukan tanya jawab tentang isi resep pada TASK 7, secara bergantian, misalnya setiap dua pertanyaan.
4. Selama kegiatan berlangsung, Bapak/Ibu Guru mengamati kegiatan bercakap-cakap peserta didik. Bapak/Ibu Guru membantu peserta didik yang menemui kesulitan, serta memotivasi peserta didik yang kurang aktif dalam kegiatan tanya jawab ini.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai atas penampilan peserta didik.

### Contoh jawaban:

- You : Let's talk about the recipe in TASK 7. I'll ask you first.
- Your friend : O.K. Please.
- You : What is the recipe about?
- Your friend : It's a recipe of passionfruit-glazed lemon curd sponge cake.
- You : What is the weight of 1 cup of thickened cream?
- Your friend : It is 250 milliliters.
- You : Correct. Your turn, please.
- Your friend : How many ingredients are needed to make the cake? What are they?
- You : Five. They are Double Unfilled Sponge Cake, thickened cream, lemon curd, icing sugar mixture and canned passionfruit pulp.
- Your friend : Then, what does 1 cup of icing sugar mixture weigh?
- You : 160 grams.
- Your friend : Correct. Your turn now.
- You : What is the first step to make the cake?
- Your friend : Trim the side of each sponge cake using a serrated knife, to form a square.
- You : Then, what should be done after the cake becomes a square?
- Your friend : Cut each cake into 4 squares, then cut each square in half horizontally.
- You : You're right. Please your turn.
- Your friend : What is a balloon whisk used for?
- You : To whisk the cream in a bowl.
- Your friend : How long should we whisk the cream?
- You : Until firm peaks form. Am I right?
- Your friend : You're right. Your questions, please.
- You : Where should we spread the lemon curd?
- Your friend : We spread it over the cut side of each cake base.
- You : What are put at the top of the lemon curd greasing?
- Your friend : The cream and remaining cake.
- You : Correct answers.
- Your friend : My turn now. What should be done before adding the passionfruit pulp into the bowl?
- You : Sift the icing sugar into a small bowl.
- Your friend : What should we do with the mixture of the icing sugar and passionfruit pulp?
- You : We spread the mixture over the top of the cakes, allowing a little to run over the sides.
- Your friend : Definitely correct.



## TASK 10

Fill in the blanks with the suitable words from the box.

### Jawaban:

1. h
2. e
3. k
4. i
5. b
6. j
7. l
8. a
9. f
10. d



## TASK 11

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 10.

### Jawaban:

1. 14 (fourteen) ingredients.
2. We trim the snow peas, then slice them thinly.
3. 3½ cups.
4. It is evaporated, light and creamy.
5. We heat it over high heat.
6. A wok.
7. After the mixture of chicken stock, laksa paste, palm sugar and fish sauce has boiled.
8. Add lime juice and stir to combine.
9. To allow the noodles tenderize.
10. Bean sprouts, green onion, coriander leaves, sliced long red chilli and lime wedges.



## Variasi

### TASK 1

Complete the following text with the suitable words from the box.

- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| a. frying pan     | b. uncovered       |
| c. golden brown   | d. spoons          |
| e. boiling        | f. ingredients     |
| g. tender         | h. broccoli crowns |
| i. sprinkle       | j. tongs           |
| k. bones and skin | l. remaining       |

### Roasted Chicken with Vegetables

Need a quick one-pan dinner for two? Roasting all the following (1) \_\_\_\_\_ together guarantees rich flavor and makes for easy cleanup.

#### Ingredients:

- 2 tablespoons olive oil
- 2 chicken thighs with (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (about 6 oz. each)
- ½ teaspoon kosher salt, divided
- ½ teaspoon freshly ground black pepper, divided
- 4 small red thin-skinned potatoes, cut into ¾-inch wedges
- 1 tablespoon fresh thyme leaves
- 1 tablespoon finely shredded lemon zest
- 6 ounces (3) \_\_\_\_\_, cut into florets with stems

#### How to cook:

1. Preheat the oven to 375°F. Meanwhile, heat olive oil in a 12-inch ovenproof (4) \_\_\_\_\_ over medium-high heat. Generously (5) \_\_\_\_\_ both sides of the chicken with ¼ teaspoon of salt and pepper, then carefully lay the meat skin side down in hot oil. Next, add potatoes to the pan around the chicken pieces. Cook, covered and shaking the pan often, until the chicken is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ and the chicken skin is crispy, about 7 minutes.



- Using (7) \_\_\_\_\_, turn the chicken over and stir any browned potatoes. Sprinkle the chicken and potatoes with thyme and lemon zest. Lay broccoli evenly over the chicken and potatoes; sprinkle with (8) \_\_\_\_\_ ¼ teaspoon of each salt and pepper.
- Put the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ pan in the oven. Cook until potatoes are (10) \_\_\_\_\_ when pierced, stirring once, 15 to 20 minutes.

Adopted from: <http://www.myrecipes.com/recipe/roast-chicken-with-vegetables> (June 30, 2015)

### TASK 2

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 1.

- How many ingredients are needed to cook the dish? What are they?
- What is the weight of one chicken thigh used?
- What are the potatoes used like?
- What is the use of salt and pepper?
- How do we shape the broccoli crowns?
- How do we heat the olive oil in the frying pan?
- What should be done before adding potatoes to the pan?
- Why do we use tongs?
- How long should we fry the chicken?
- How long should we roast the potatoes in the oven for?

**Jawaban:**

### TASK 1

- f
- k
- h
- a
- i
- c
- j
- l
- b
- g

### TASK 2

- There are eight items: olive oil, chicken thighs with bones and skin, kosher salt, freshly ground black pepper, small red thin-skinned potatoes, fresh thyme leaves, finely shredded lemon zest and broccoli crowns.
- 6 oz.
- They are small red, thin skin.
- To sprinkle both sides of the chicken meat and sprinkle the dish before putting it in the oven.
- We cut them into florets with stems.
- We heat it over medium-high heat.
- Lay the meat skin side down in hot oil in the pan.
- To turn the chicken over.
- Until the chicken is golden brown and the chicken skin is crispy, about 7 minutes.
- Around 15 to 20 minutes.



### TASK 12

Arrange the following sentences to form a suitable procedural text.

**Jawaban:**

The correct arrangement of the sentences is 4–1–6–2–7–3–5.



### TASK 13

Identify the structure of the text in TASK 12 by completing the following table.

**Jawaban:**

Title/Goal	Avocado Lettuce Tomato Sandwich (ALT)
Ingredients	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Toasted whole grain bread</li> <li>Sliced avocado</li> <li>Lettuce</li> <li>Sliced fresh tomato</li> <li>Kosher salt</li> <li>Mayonnaise</li> </ul>
Step 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For each sandwich, toast two slices of whole grain bread.</li> <li>While the bread is toasting, slice your tomato and avocado.</li> </ul>
Step 2	Slather as much (or little) mayonnaise to taste, on one side of each slice of toasted bread.
Step 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add a layer of sliced avocado and sprinkle a little kosher salt over it.</li> <li>Add a layer of lettuce and a layer of sliced tomatoes.</li> <li>Sprinkle a little salt over the tomatoes too.</li> </ul>
The last step	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Top with the second slice of toasted bread.</li> <li>Cut the sandwich in half if you want, to make it easier to eat. Enjoy!</li> </ul>



### Variasi

#### TASK 1

Arrange the following sentences into a suitable procedural text.

#### Easy Spaghetti Bolognese

- You need:
  - 2 tbsp olive oil
  - 400g/14oz beef mince
  - 1 onion, diced
  - 2 garlic cloves, chopped
  - 100g/3½oz carrot, grated
  - 2 × 400g tin chopped tomatoes
  - 400ml/14fl oz stock, ideally from beef
  - 400g/14oz dried spaghetti
  - salt and pepper
- Add the tomatoes to the pan and stir well to mix. Pour in the stock, bring to a simmer and then reduce the temperature to simmer gently for 45 minutes, or until the sauce is thick and rich. Taste and adjust the seasoning as necessary.
- A classic Bolognese sauce still tastes great, no matter how simple. Get that depth of flavor by cooking the sauce very gently until it's super rich. This sauce can be cooked in advance and frozen.
- Heat a large saucepan over a medium heat. Add a tablespoon of olive oil and once hot add the beef mince and a pinch of salt and pepper. Cook the mince until well browned over a medium-high heat (be careful not to burn the mince. It just needs to be a dark brown color). Once browned, transfer the mince to a bowl and set aside.

5. When ready to cook the spaghetti, heat a large saucepan of water and add a pinch of salt. Cook according to the packet instructions. Once the spaghetti is cooked through, drain and add to the pan with the bolognese sauce. Mix well and serve.
6. Add another tablespoon of oil to the saucepan you browned the mince in and turn the heat to medium. Add the onions and a pinch of salt and fry gently for 5-6 minutes, or until softened and translucent. Add the garlic and cook for another 2 minutes. Add the grated carrot, then pour the mince and any juices in the bowl back into the saucepan.

Adopted from: [http://www.bbc.co.uk/food/recipes/easy\\_spaghetti\\_bolognese\\_93639](http://www.bbc.co.uk/food/recipes/easy_spaghetti_bolognese_93639) (June 28, 2015)

### TASK 2

Identify the structure of the text in TASK 1 by completing the following table.

Title/Goal	
Ingredients	
Step 1	
Step 2	
Step 3	
The last step	

**Jawaban:**

### TASK 1

The correct arrangement of the sentences is 3–1–4–6–2–5.

### TASK 2

Title/Goal	Easy Spaghetti Bolognese
Ingredients	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2 tbsp olive oil</li> <li>• 1 onion, diced</li> <li>• 100g/3½oz carrot, grated</li> <li>• 400ml/14fl oz stock, ideally made from beef</li> <li>• salt and pepper</li> <li>• 400g/14oz beef mince</li> <li>• 2 garlic cloves, chopped</li> <li>• 2 × 400g tin chopped tomatoes</li> <li>• 400g/14oz dried spaghetti</li> </ul>
Step 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heat a large saucepan over a medium heat.</li> <li>• Add a tablespoon of olive oil and once hot add the beef mince and a pinch of salt and pepper.</li> <li>• Cook the mince until well browned over a medium-high heat (be careful not to burn the mince. It just needs to be a dark brown color).</li> <li>• Once browned, transfer the mince to a bowl and set aside.</li> </ul>
Step 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add another tablespoon of oil to the saucepan you browned the mince in and turn the heat to medium.</li> <li>• Add the onions and a pinch of salt and fry gently for 5–6 minutes, or until softened and translucent.</li> <li>• Add the garlic and cook for another 2 minutes.</li> <li>• Add the grated carrot, then pour the mince and any juices in the bowl back into the saucepan.</li> </ul>
Step 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add the tomatoes to the pan and stir well to mix.</li> <li>• Pour in the stock, bring to a simmer and then reduce the temperature to simmer gently for 45 minutes, or until the sauce is thick and rich.</li> <li>• Taste and adjust the seasoning as necessary.</li> </ul>
The last step	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When ready to cook the spaghetti, heat a large saucepan of water and add a pinch of salt.</li> <li>• Cook according to the packet instructions.</li> <li>• Once the spaghetti is cooked through, drain and add to the pan with the bolognese sauce.</li> <li>• Mix well and serve.</li> </ul>



## TASK 14

Work in pairs.

Find two procedural texts: one is a recipe, another is a manual.

Identify the similarities and differences of the texts.

Share your work with the class.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Pada pertemuan sebelumnya, peserta didik telah diminta membentuk pasangan.
2. Setiap pasangan mencari dua teks prosedur: satu berbentuk resep dan yang lainnya berbentuk *manual*.
3. Pada pertemuan yang telah ditentukan, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta setiap pasangan mendiskusikan persamaan dan perbedaan resep dan *manual* yang telah mereka bawa.
4. Setelah waktu diskusi habis, Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi beberapa pasangan untuk menyampaikan hasil diskusinya.
5. Peserta didik yang lain menyimak dan memberi masukan atas laporan temannya.
6. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan nilai atas hasil kerja peserta didik.

Contoh jawaban:

#### 1. Recipe

##### Banana Coconut Tapioca Puddings

- 1 cup (200g) tapioca pearls
- 400g can coconut milk
- 1 cup (250ml) water
- ½ cup (80g) finely chopped palm sugar
- 2 pandan leaves, tied into a knot
- 3 just ripe bananas, peeled, thickly sliced
- 2 tablespoons finely grated dark palm sugar
- 1 tablespoon water, extra
- 1 tablespoon sesame seeds
- 1 mango, peeled, thinly sliced, to serve
- ½ ripe pineapple, peeled, thinly sliced, to serve



Source: <http://www.steamed-banana-cake>, downloaded July 2, 2015

#### Steps:

1. Place the tapioca in a large bowl and cover with cold water. Set aside for 2 hours to soak, then strain through a fine sieve. Cook in a large saucepan of boiling water for 10 minutes or until opaque. Drain well.
2. Meanwhile, combine the coconut milk, water, sugar and pandan leaves in a large saucepan over low heat and stir. Cook for 5 minutes or until sugar dissolves and mixture is heated through. After that, add the tapioca and gently stir to combine. When it is cooked, remove from heat and set aside to cool slightly. Add the banana slices into a bowl and cover with plastic wrap. Place in the fridge to chill.
3. Combine the dark palm sugar and water in a small frying pan over high heat and stir. Cook for 2 minutes or until sugar dissolves. Add the sesame seeds and stir. Cook for 2 minutes or until syrup thickens.
4. Remove and discard the pandan leaves from tapioca and spoon the tapioca among serving bowls. Serve topped with mango and pineapple slices and drizzle with sesame syrup.

Adopted from: <http://www.taste.com.au/recipes/19022/banana+coconut+tapioca+puddings+che+chuo?ref=collections,asian-recipes> (June 28, 2015)

#### 2. Manual

##### How to Operate a Microwave Oven

#### Instructions:

1. Open microwave door (depending on the style you may have to pull a handle or push a button to open). Do not set oven for excessive cook times.
2. Place the item (plate, container, tray, mug) containing the food or drink inside the microwave. If the food or drink inside is in an aluminum container, remove and place into something that is microwave compatible.
3. Close the door and set cook or reheat time as suggested for the particular food or drink. If no suggestions or recommendations are given, you may start with one to two minutes, depending on the contents' temperature. If contents are frozen, you can defrost first before actually cooking.
4. Restart microwave if additional cooking is needed after four minutes.
5. Check contents periodically and (turn or stir) to ensure even cooking.
6. Remove food carefully and/or allow food to cool before removing.

Adopted from: [http://www.ehow.com/how\\_4500746\\_operate-microwave-oven.html](http://www.ehow.com/how_4500746_operate-microwave-oven.html) (June 30, 2015)

The result:

Similarities	Differences
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Both texts belongs to procedural texts.</li> <li>2. Both texts show actions to take, to achieve the goals: making banana coconut tapioca puddings and operating a microwave oven.</li> <li>3. Both texts consist many imperative sentences and several time sequencers.</li> </ol>	<p>The structure of Text 1 consists of aim, ingredients and steps to make the dish.</p> <p>The structure of Text 2 consists of aim and steps to operate the appliance, without mentioning ingredients or materials.</p>



## TASK 15

What is your favorite dish?

Write a recipe to make it.

Share your work with the class.

Contoh jawaban:

##### Fried Noodles

#### Ingredients:

- 3 (3 ounces) packages ramen noodles (without flavor packets)
- 2 tablespoons vegetable oil
- 1 pound skinless, boneless chicken breast halves, cut into strips
- 1 teaspoon olive oil
- 1 teaspoon garlic salt
- 1 pinch ground black pepper, or to taste
- ½ cup chopped shallots
- 5 cloves garlic, chopped
- 1 cup shredded cabbage
- 1 cup shredded carrots
- 1 cup broccoli florets
- 1 cup sliced fresh mushrooms
- ¼ cup soy sauce
- ¼ cup sweet soy sauce (Indonesian *kecap manis*)
- ¼ cup oyster sauce
- Salt and pepper to taste

**Directions:**

1. Boil a pan of water and cook the ramen until tender, about 3 minutes. Dip the noodles into cold water to stop the cooking, drain in a colander set in the sink and drizzle the noodles with 1 tablespoon of vegetable oil. Set aside.
2. Place the chicken strips in a bowl and toss with olive oil, garlic, salt and black pepper. Heat 1 tablespoon of oil in a wok over high heat, then cook and stir until the chicken is no longer pink, about 5 minutes. After that, add the shallots and garlic and stir until they start to turn brown. Then, add the cabbage, carrots, broccoli and mushrooms. Cook and stir until the vegetables are tender, about 5 minutes.
3. Pour the ramen noodles, soy sauce, sweet soy sauce and oyster sauce into the pan. Stir the noodles and sauces with the vegetables and chicken well until combined. When the noodles are cooked, bring the mixture to a simmer, sprinkle with fried onion and pepper, and serve hot.

Adopted from: <http://allrecipes.com/Recipe/Mie-Goreng—Indonesian-Fried-Noodles/Detail.aspx?evt19=1&referringHubId=698> (June 28, 2015)

**TASK 17**

Read the following song lyrics.  
What is the message?

**Jawaban:**

The message of the song is a true friendship will last forever though you and your friend(s) live apart.

**Assessment**

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

1. D 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. E  
6. C 7. A 8. A 9. E 10. E

B. Write a recipe of a cuisine from a certain city or country that you know.

**Contoh jawaban:****Shrimp Pad Thai**

Quick and delicious, pad Thai is a ubiquitous street food in Thailand.

**Ingredients:**

- 12 ounces rice vermicelli noodles
- $\frac{1}{3}$  cup peanut or vegetable oil
- 1 tablespoon minced garlic
- 8 ounces (30 to 35 per lb.) raw shrimp, peeled and deveined
- 5 green onions, cut into 2-in. pieces
- 1 tablespoon dried shrimp, minced
- 2 cups bean sprouts, divided
- cup Vietnamese or Thai fish sauce
- 2 tablespoons ketchup
- 2 tablespoons sugar
- 1 teaspoon red chile flakes
- 2 large eggs, slightly beaten
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cilantro leaves
- $\frac{1}{3}$  cup chopped roasted unsalted peanuts (optional)
- 6 to 8 lime wedges
- Sriracha (Asian red chile sauce; optional)

**Directions:**

1. Soak vermicelli noodles in a bowl of very hot water until soft, about 15 minutes, stirring often to prevent sticking.
2. Meanwhile, heat a large wok or frying pan over high heat. Pour in oil and carefully swirl to coat sides. Add garlic, shrimp and green onions and cook for 2 minutes, stirring often. Stir in dried shrimp, 1 cup beansprouts, fish sauce, ketchup, sugar and chile flakes. Push shrimp mixture to one side of pan and carefully pour eggs onto other side, trying to coat the pan evenly. Let cook undisturbed for 1 minute, then quickly scramble with other ingredients.
3. Drain noodles and add to egg mixture. Cook until noodles start to brown slightly, 3 to 4 minutes, stirring once or twice.
4. Transfer to plates. Top with remaining bean sprouts, the cilantro and peanuts. Serve with lime wedges and Sriracha.

Adopted from: <http://www.myrecipes.com/recipe/shrimp-pad-thai> (June 30, 2015)

# UNIT XV

## Keep It Well

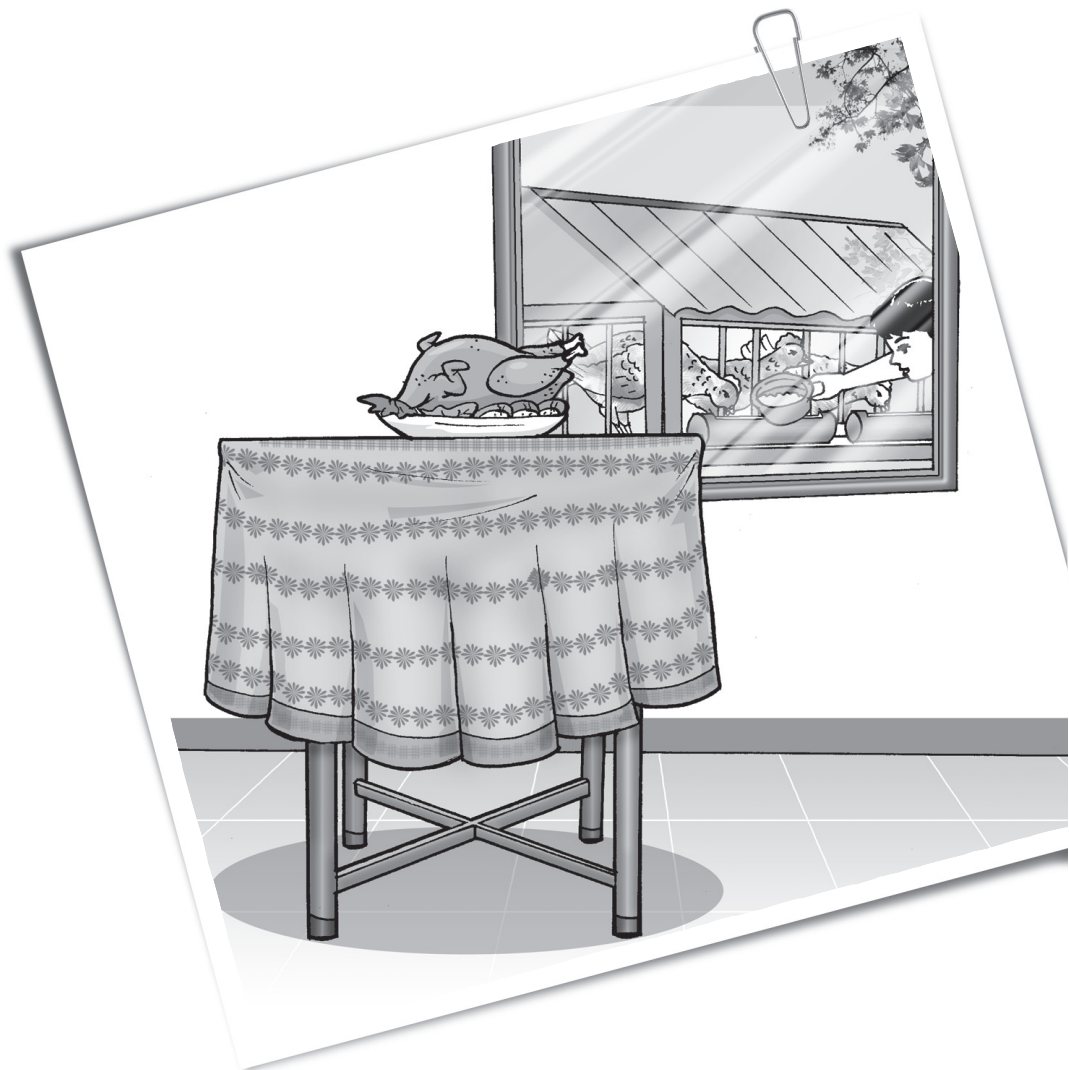
### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to:
  - a. explain the steps on how to do or make in sequence,
  - b. use adverbial phrases and verbs showing commands or imperative sentences.
2. be able to:
  - a. explain the steps on how to do or make in sequence,
  - b. use adverbial phrases and verbs showing commands or imperative sentences.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. tell procedures on how to breed animals or cook orderly,
3. be cooperative, brave and active in communicating in English.



Can you cook a menu made with chicken? Do you also breed chickens at home? If you do, you should know the information about how to cook or breed them step by step. Such information is called a procedural text and you will learn more about procedural texts in this unit.



## TASK 1

In groups, discuss the following questions.  
Share your answers with the class.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membuat kelompok, sebaiknya dengan teman-teman yang duduknya berjauhan.
2. Setiap kelompok memahami pertanyaan-pertanyaan berikut dan mendiskusikannya. Selama peserta didik berdiskusi, Bapak/Ibu Guru berkeliling mengawasi kegiatan peserta didik.
3. Kemudian Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta setiap kelompok tunjuk jari dan melaporkan jawaban mereka.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengoreksi pelafalan peserta didik yang kurang tepat.
5. Bapak/Ibu Guru memberi balikan dan pujian kepada peserta didik yang berani menjawab.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. My favorite food is fried chicken.
2. I like it so much because it is crunchy and delicious.
3. Yes, it is.
4. I need chicken, flour, water, salt, garlic and coriander.
5. First, prepare chicken, flour, water and ingredients (salt, garlic and coriander). Then, grind the ingredients and smear the chicken with them. After that, put the chicken in flour which has been mixed with water. Next, heat oil on a frying pan. On a medium heat, fry the chicken until golden and crunchy. Serve immediately on the plate.



## TASK 2

Read the texts and answer the questions that follow.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membaca dalam hati dua teks berikut dan memahami makna kata-kata baru. Peserta didik dapat menggunakan kamus.
2. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menyebutkan persamaan dan perbedaan kedua teks tersebut.
3. Peserta didik diminta membaca nyaring kedua teks tersebut secara bergiliran. Bapak/Ibu Guru menyimak pelafalan peserta didik yang kurang tepat.
4. Selanjutnya peserta didik menjawab pertanyaan di bawah teks. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas jawaban bersama-sama.
5. Kemudian Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami *Supporting Feature* tentang *adverbial phrases*.
6. Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk membuat kalimat menggunakan *adverbial phrases* serta mencari berbagai referensi tentang *adverbial phrases*.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. Yes. The texts contain time sequencers such as first, then, after that, next, later, etc. The time sequencers are used to show a chronological order.
2. No, I don't. The two texts have different purposes. Text 1 is aimed to entertain readers by telling of a past experience while Text 2 is aimed at steps on how to cook a menu.



## Variasi

Answer the following questions based on the texts in TASK 2.

### Text 1

1. When did the story take place?
2. What should the writer have done when his/her parents were out?
3. Where did the writer find the recipe from?
4. What did the writer and his/her sister make?
5. Why did the writer feel happy?

### Text 2

1. What is the text about?
2. What is the main ingredient of the food?
3. How do you cook the honey, soy sauce, garlic and ginger root in a small saucepan?
4. Where should we arrange the chicken layers?
5. How should we continue baking?

### Jawaban:

#### Text 1

1. Last week.
2. He/she should maintain the house and cook for his/her sister and him/her.
3. A female magazine.
4. A menu made with chicken.
5. It was his/her first experience at cooking.

#### Text 2

1. It's about how to make traditional food from Indonesia, i.e. ginger chicken.
2. Chicken.
3. Over low heat until the honey is melted.
4. In a shallow baking pan.
5. Until the juices run clear when you cut between a leg and thigh and the sauce is rich, dark brown.



## TASK 3

Copy Text 2 in TASK 2 and underline the adverbial phrases.

### Jawaban:

Let's make traditional food from Indonesia, ginger chicken. First of all, prepare the ingredients. They are chicken, quartered with back removed, 1 cup of honey,  $\frac{3}{4}$  cup of soy sauce, 8 to 12 cloves of garlic and  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup of fresh ginger root, peeled and grated.

Now, it's time to cook. First, cook the honey, soy sauce, garlic and ginger root in a small saucepan over low heat until the honey is melted. Second, arrange the chicken layers in a shallow baking pan, skin side down and pour the sauce. After that, cover the pan tightly with aluminum foil. Marinate overnight in the refrigerator. Then, preheat the oven to 350 degrees F.

Later, place the baking pan in the oven and bake for 30 minutes. Next, uncover the pan, turn the chicken skin and raise the temperature to 375 degrees F. Finally, continue baking for 30 minutes or until the juices run clear when you cut between a leg and thigh and the sauce is rich, dark brown.



## Variasi

Copy the text and underline the adverbial phrases.

If you want to breed pond fish, you should learn the techniques which are fairly easily. Common pond fish such as goldfish and koi require little supervision or help in order to breed. However, if you want to assist in successful breeding, this is what you should do.

1. Increase temperature

Like many other animals, pond fish will begin to spawn in the spring. The surest indicator of the spawning season is the increase in water temperature. If you'd like to promote early spawning, use a pond heater to increase the temperature to about 74°F/23°C.

2. Place egg media

Use a cork with yarn attached, or suspend a string mop head over the pond. The dangling strings are good egg media. You can also use evergreen branches tied together and hung in the water. Artificial water plants are also an option.

3. Watch for the eggs

Goldfish are not as obvious, but you will note the male fish following the females around the pond and through the hatching media. When the eggs are laid, they are sticky and clear.

4. Separate parents from the eggs

Parents of pond fish will eat their own eggs and young (called fry). Because of this, as soon as the eggs are laid, they should be separated from the parents.

5. Care of the fry

For the first three days, the fry do not need to be fed. After that, feed them standard fish food. Pellets should be ground for the first month.

Adopted from: <http://www.doityourself.com/stry/pond-fish-breeding> (June 29, 2015)

### Jawaban:

If you want to breed pond fish, you should learn the techniques which are fairly easily. Common pond fish such as goldfish and koi require little supervision or help in order to breed. However, if you want to assist in successful breeding, this is what you should do.

1. Increase temperature

Like many other animals, pond fish will begin to spawn in the spring. The surest indicator of the spawning season is the increase in water temperature. If you'd like to promote early spawning, use a pond heater to increase the temperature to about 74°F/23°C.

2. Place egg media

Use a cork with yarn attached, or suspend a string mop head over the pond. The dangling strings are good egg media. You can also use evergreen branches tied together and hung in the water. Artificial water plants are also an option.

3. Watch for the eggs

Goldfish are not as obvious, but you will note the male fish following the females around the pond and through the hatching media. When the eggs are laid, they are sticky and clear.

4. Separate parents from the eggs

Parents of pond fish will eat their own eggs and young (called fry). Because of this, as soon as the eggs are laid, they should be separated from the parents.

5. Care of the fry

For the first three days, the fry do not need to be fed. After that, feed them standard fish food. Pellets should be ground for the first month.



## TASK 4

In groups, discuss the following questions. Share your answers with the class.

### Contoh jawaban:

1. Yes, I do./No, I don't.
2. I like breeding chickens because they can produce eggs and meat, source of proteins.
3. Yes, I have./No, I haven't.
4. The information about how to keep chickens healthy.



## TASK 5

Read the text and pay attention to its text structure.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami teks berikut dan mencari makna kata-kata baru.
2. Peserta didik diminta membaca nyaring teks tersebut secara bergiliran. Bapak/Ibu Guru mengoreksi pelafalan peserta didik yang kurang tepat.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik menyebutkan kata kerja yang menunjukkan perintah dalam teks tersebut.
4. Selanjutnya peserta didik diminta memahami penjelasan dalam *Supporting Features*.
5. Sebagai pengembangan, Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat meminta peserta didik menyebutkan kalimat dengan menggunakan kata kerja yang menunjukkan perintah.



## TASK 6

Answer the questions based on the text in TASK 5.

### Jawaban:

1. It's about the steps on how to breed chickens.
2. Four. They are coop for chickens, chicken feed, cleaning equipment and incubation medium.
3. Five steps. They are know the law, choose your breed, build a coop, care and feed the chickens and decide between incubating the eggs yourself or allowing the hen to raise its chicks.
4. Yes, I do. Because the steps show a sequential or chronological order of a procedure.
5. We should check our municipal regulations and/or homeowner association rules, whether we are allowed to breed chickens or prohibited from doing that.
6. The coop functions as shelter for the chicken and becomes a part of the landscape.
7. To avoid danger.
8. Plenty of water.
9. It is about 21 days hatching.
10. It refers to standard chickens.



## TASK 7

What do the following words mean?

### Jawaban:

1. kandang
2. memberi makan
3. yang berkaitan dengan kota
4. melarang

5. peraturan
6. memelihara, membesarkan
7. keturunan
8. berat
9. perlindungan
10. pengawasan
11. menggores, menggarut
12. predator (binatang pemakan binatang lain)
13. memeras
14. biji
15. konsisten



### TASK 8

Complete the following sentences with the correct words from TASK 7.

**Jawaban:**

- |             |                |              |
|-------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. squeeze  | 2. feeds       | 3. ordinance |
| 4. predator | 5. grains      | 6. scratched |
| 7. coop     | 8. supervision | 9. shelter   |
| 10. banned  |                |              |



### TASK 9

Use appropriate verbs showing commands (imperative sentences) to fill in the blanks.

**Jawaban:**

- |               |               |                    |
|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. Visit/See  | 2. Peel; cut  | 3. Iron; put/place |
| 4. Crack; mix | 5. Pour; stir | 6. Clean           |
| 7. Close      | 8. Blend; add | 9. Buy             |
| 10. Water     |               |                    |



### TASK 10

Copy the sentences in TASK 9 and underline the adverbial phrases.

**Jawaban:**

1. Visit/See the veterinarian to check your pet's disease.
2. Peel the onions to get rid of their skin and cut them into small pieces.
3. Iron the clothes using the new iron and put/place them in the wardrobe neatly.
4. Crack the eggs and mix them with flour and sugar. We will make dough.
5. Pour hot water into the cup and stir the coffee and sugar in it with a tea spoon.
7. Close the door of the refrigerator properly for efficiency of energy and its cool maintenance.
8. Blend the mixture of fruit properly using the blender and add sugar into it.
9. Buy chicken and bird feed from a pet store, near the traditional market.
10. Water the flowering trees in the garden with enough water so that they can grow well.



## Variasi

### TASK 1

Complete the following text with the correct words from the box.

- |               |           |               |
|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| a. Transplant | b. Water  | c. Select     |
| d. Plant      | e. Make   | f. Harden off |
| g. Fertilize  | h. till   | i. Establish  |
| j. start      | k. finish | l. Tweak off  |

### How to Plant Tomatoes

**Ingredients:**

- tomato seeds
- well-drained soil
- stakes or cages

**Methods:**

1. If you're planting seeds, **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_ indoors 6 to 8 weeks before the average last spring frost date.
2. **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_ a site with plenty of sunlight and well-drained soil.
3. Two weeks before transplanting seedlings outdoors, **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_ the soil to about 1 foot and mix in aged manure, compost or fertilizer.
4. **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_ transplants for a week before moving outdoors.
5. **(5)** \_\_\_\_\_ after the last spring frost when the soil is warm.
6. **(6)** \_\_\_\_\_ stakes or cages in the soil at the time of planting. Staking keeps developing fruit off the ground, while caging lets the plant hold itself upright. A few sorts of support system are recommended, but sprawling can also produce fine crops if you have the space and if the weather cooperates.
7. **(7)** \_\_\_\_\_ seedlings two feet apart.
8. **(8)** \_\_\_\_\_ a few of the lower branches on transplants and plant the root ball deep enough so that the remaining lowest leaves are just above the surface of the soil.
9. **(9)** \_\_\_\_\_ well to reduce shock to the roots.
10. **(10)** \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks prior to first picking and again two weeks after first picking.

Adopted from: <http://www.almanac.com/plant/tomatoes> (June 29, 2015)

### TASK 2

Answer the following questions based on the text in TASK 1.

1. What is the text about?
2. Which site should we choose?
3. When should we till the soil to about 1 foot and mix in aged manure?
4. Why should we establish stakes at the time of planting?
5. What distance should we plant seedlings apart?
6. What should we do to reduce shocks to the roots?
7. When should we fertilize the plant?
8. "... prior to first picking and again two weeks after first picking." (Step 10)  
What is the similar meaning of the underlined word?

### TASK 3

Copy the text in TASK 1 and underline the adverbial phrases.

**Jawaban:**

**TASK 1**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. j | 2. c | 3. h | 4. f | 5. a  |
| 6. i | 7. d | 8. l | 9. b | 10. g |



**TASK 2**

1. It's the procedure on how to plant tomatoes.
2. A site with plenty of sunlight and well-drained soil.
3. Two weeks before transplanting seedlings outdoors.
4. To keep developing fruit off the ground.
5. Two feet apart.
6. Water the plant well.
7. Two weeks prior to first picking and two weeks after first picking.
8. It is 'before'.

**TASK 3**

**How to Plant Tomatoes**

**Ingredients:**

- tomato seeds
- well-drained soil
- stakes or cages

**Methods:**

1. If you're planting seeds, start indoors 6 to 8 weeks before the average last spring frost date.
2. Select a site with plenty of sunlight and well-drained soil.
3. Two weeks before transplanting seedlings outdoors, till the soil to about 1 foot and mix in aged manure, compost or fertilizer.
4. Harden off transplants for a week before moving outdoors.
5. Transplant after the last spring frost when the soil is warm.
6. Establish stakes or cages in the soil at the time of planting. Staking keeps developing fruit off the ground, while caging lets the plant hold itself upright. A few sorts of support system are recommended, but sprawling can also produce fine crops if you have the space and if the weather cooperates.
7. Plant seedlings two feet apart.
8. Tweak off a few of the lower branches on transplants and plant the root ball deep enough so that the remaining lowest leaves are just above the surface of the soil.
9. Water well to reduce shock to the roots.
10. Fertilize two weeks prior to first picking and again two weeks after first picking.



**TASK 11**

Arrange the following steps to form a sequential procedural text.

**Jawaban:**

The correct arrangement of the jumbled steps is: 6-2-4-1-5-3.



**Variasi**

**TASK 1**

Complete the following table to analyze the text in TASK 11.

**Petunjuk Guru**

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memahami kembali teks yang telah urut pada kegiatan sebelumnya.
2. Peserta didik diminta melengkapi tabel berdasarkan teks tersebut.
3. Bapak/Ibu Guru dan peserta didik membahas jawaban bersama-sama.

Parts of the Text	
Goal	_____
Materials	_____ _____ _____
Steps	_____ _____ _____ _____

**TASK 2**

Complete the following statements based on the text in TASK 11.

1. Most turtles will breed on the fall. To ensure that the turtles will breed, we should mimick \_\_\_\_\_.
2. To start creating an indoor environment for our turtles, we should \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The female turtle will lay between \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ eggs.
4. We move the eggs of turtles into a box as the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The hatching process will last for \_\_\_\_\_ days.

**Jawaban:**

**TASK 1**

Parts of the Text	
Goal	How to breed turtles
Materials	- a pair of turtles - vermiculate - nesting area
Steps	<b>Step 1:</b> Winterize the turtles. <b>Step 2:</b> Provide a nesting area and the appropriate environment. <b>Step 3:</b> Remove the eggs. <b>Step 4:</b> Incubate with vermiculate. <b>Step 5:</b> Wait for the eggs to hatch.

**TASK 2**

1. the seasons that the turtle would normally experience if they were in the wild
2. start with a box that has enough room to place between 14 and 18 inches of soil in the bottom of the container while still having enough room for your turtles in the box
3. 2; 12
4. incubator
5. 80 and 150



**TASK 12**

Copy the text in TASK 11.

Circle the verbs showing commands or imperative sentences and underline the adverbial phrases in the text.

**Jawaban:**

Let's try to breed turtles. First, prepare a pair of turtles and materials such as a vermiculate and nesting area.

Here are the steps. First, winterize the turtles. Most turtles will not breed until the fall. However, it is important to create as much of a natural atmosphere as possible for your turtles to

ensure that they will breed. This means mimicking the seasons that the turtle would normally experience if they were in the wild. This is why many breeders will recommend that you winterize turtles during the months of January and February. You can do this by changing the temperature of your turtle habitat to between 50 and 60 degrees for about 6 weeks and then gradually returning their habitat to their regular temperature.

Next, provide a nesting area and the appropriate environment. The best environment to insure that you will have a successful mating season is to have a natural outdoor environment. However, the appropriate indoor environment can also work. When creating an indoor environment for your turtles, start with a box that has enough room to place between 14 and 18 inches of soil in the bottom of the container while still having enough room for your turtles in the box. Moss or sand can also work; just be sure to spray the environment with a spray bottle to keep the area moist. This will give your turtles the right atmosphere in which they mate.

Then, remove the eggs. After the turtles have successfully mated, the female will lay between 2 and 12 eggs. Lightly mark the tops of the eggs with a non-toxic marker. Being very careful to not turn the egg from its original position, move the eggs to a separate box that will act as an incubator. Be sure that you keep the marker mark facing up the entire move as to not turn over the eggs.

Later, incubate with vermiculate. Go to your local pet store and buy a container of vermiculate. Follow the instructions provided with the vermiculate. Once the vermiculate has set, place the eggs gently into the vermiculate. Seal the box with just a few openings for air and keep the temperature within the box as close to 80 degrees as possible.

Finally, wait for the eggs to hatch. The hatching process should take between 80 and 150 days.



## TASK 13

*Observe an animal or pet around you.  
Find references about how to breed the animal or pet on the Internet or in books.  
Write a procedural text about how to breed it.*

**Contoh jawaban:**

### How to Breed Rabbits

#### You'll need:

- a pair of rabbits
- hutch
- extra hay and bedding
- a nesting box

#### Methods:

1. Decide why you want to breed rabbits.  
Breeding rabbits is a huge responsibility that takes time, commitment and patience. Before you begin breeding rabbits, decide why you want to do this. Are you planning on selling them? Do you want them as pets? Are you breeding them for meat? Decide on what you truly want to be committed to. If you don't have the time, think you will get tired of it, or eventually want to send the rabbits to a shelter, rethink your plans.
2. Choose the right rabbits to breed.  
The breed you choose might depend on availability, price and preference. What you plan on doing with the rabbits also determines which breeds you choose. Several people want to show and sell the rabbits, while others want to keep them as pets, and others breed rabbits for meat.
3. Breed your rabbits at the proper age.  
You want to start breeding does (female rabbits) when they are reaching maturity. For small-medium breeds, they can be bred at 5-6 months old. Larger breeds can be bred at 8-9 months. Bucks (male rabbits) are usually ready at around 6 months old if a small breed, 7 months for medium and 9 months for a large breed.
4. Put the doe in the buck's hutch.  
A female's cage will smell like it, so the buck may get distracted by the unfamiliar smells and try to mark the territory. They may also fight. Always take the female to the male.
5. Provide plenty of extra hay and bedding.  
Around day 22, a nesting box should be put in the doe's cage. This is for the doe to build a nest with. The nesting box should have soft straw, hay or pine shavings. Leave extra material around for it so it can make its nest. It will also pluck its chest and stomach hair to fill the nest.
6. Give the doe peace and quiet.  
The mother needs a quiet, stress-free environment while pregnant. Don't lift it unless you absolutely have to. Unnecessary lifting can damage the litter. If you do lift it, don't lift it by its stomach.
7. Expect the mother to give birth 32-33 days after breeding.  
The mother will start nesting around days 29-32 and by day 32-33, it will give birth.
8. Feed the doe more.  
Once the babies are born, give the mother as much dry food as required as feeding the babies will drain it. Continue giving vegetables, but don't increase on it. If you increase the food during the last week of pregnancy, don't increase again until 3-4 days after giving birth. Stop completely if its droppings appear loose.
9. Clean the hutch and box often.  
Poor conditions can cause the babies to die. You want to make sure the nesting box isn't overrun with urine and feces and you want to make sure the hutch and outdoor run is clean and hygienic. Mothers can defecate a lot, which may attract flies. These flies can cause infections to the newly born.

Adopted from: <http://www.wikihow.com/Breed-Rabbits> (June 29, 2015)



## TASK 15

Read the song lyrics.  
What is the message?

**Contoh jawaban:**

The song is about a person who lost her friend. She meets a lonely yellow bird and intends to become and fly with the bird. However, she can't do that



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

**Jawaban:**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. A | 4. B | 5. E  |
| 6. C | 7. A | 8. A | 9. E | 10. D |

B. Write a procedural text about how to cook or breed an animal.

**Contoh jawaban:**

**Rabbit Casserole**

This recipe cooks rabbit with herbs to make a delicious casserole.

**Ingredients:**

- 2 rabbits, jointed
- 6 tbsp olive oil
- 4 garlic cloves, crushed
- 1 sprig fresh rosemary
- 2 bay leaves
- ½ lemon, juice only
- 55g or 2oz seasoned flour
- 1 onion, sliced
- 1 celery stalk, sliced
- 8 anchovy fillets in oil
- 85g or 3oz capers

**Steps:**

1. Place the rabbit pieces into a large bowl and add three tablespoons of the olive oil, the garlic, rosemary, bay leaves and lemon juice. Stir until well combined, then cover and marinate in the fridge overnight.
2. Preheat the oven to 170°C or 325°F.
3. Remove the rabbit pieces from the marinade (reserve the marinade) and pat dry with kitchen paper. Dust the rabbit pieces in the seasoned flour and shake off any excess.
4. Heat the remaining olive oil in a large pan over a medium heat. Add the rabbit pieces to the hot oil and fry for 4–5 minutes or until golden-brown all over. Transfer the rabbit pieces to an ovenproof casserole dish.
5. Pour the reserved marinade into the hot frying pan and warm through, then pour it into the casserole with the rabbit. Add the onion and celery to the casserole and cook in the oven for 45 minutes, or until the rabbit is tender. Add the anchovies and capers and cook for another 15 minutes.

Adopted from: [http://www.bbc.co.uk/food/recipes/rabbit\\_casserole\\_08297](http://www.bbc.co.uk/food/recipes/rabbit_casserole_08297) (June 29, 2015)

# UNIT XVI

## It's Your Time to Fly



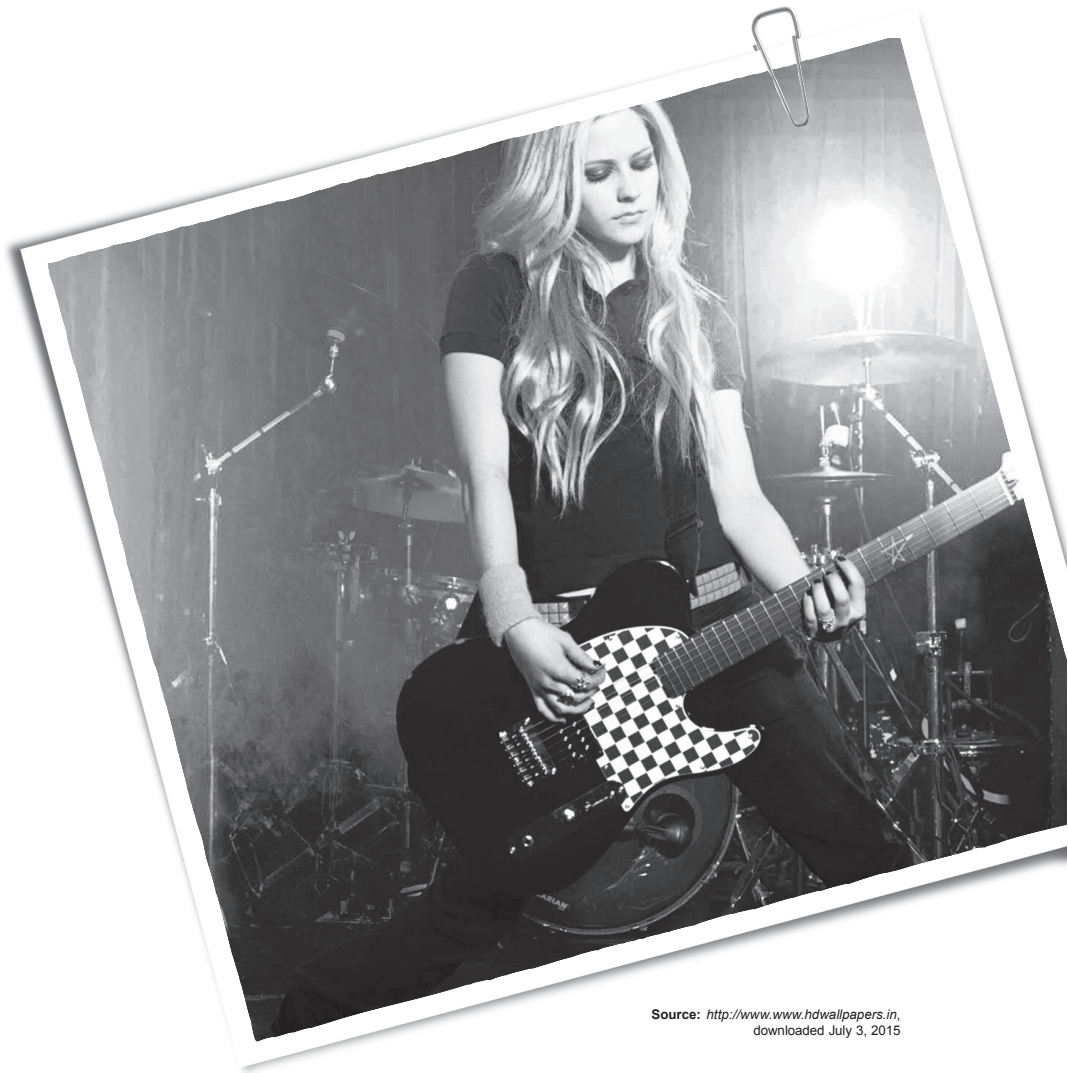
### Aims:

After learning this unit, you should:

1. be able to understand how to identify the message of a song,
2. be able to understand the message of a song.

Based on the knowledge and skills you have learned, you are expected to:

1. be appreciative for the opportunity to study English,
2. be cooperative and confident when communicating in English with other people.



Source: <http://www.www.hdwallpapers.in>,  
downloaded July 3, 2015

People say that songs can influence mood. Do you think so? What song can change your mood? What is the song about? Who sang the song? What is the message of the song?

In this unit, you will learn several songs and try to understand the message in each one. Furthermore, you can also improve your vocabulary and speaking skill by learning songs. So, be active during the lessons.



### TASK 1

Work in pairs.

Discuss songs that can influence mood.

Share the result of your discussion with the class.

#### Contoh jawaban:

1. *Fix You* by Coldplay: It is a sad song. The singer sings the song to encourage his beloved whose father just passed away.
2. *Feeling Good* by Soundroll: The song is easy listening. When we listen to the song, we will feel better. The tone of the song is nice enough to listen to.
3. *All about that Bass* by Meghan Trainor: This song encourages us to build our confidence. It conveys the message that we should stop worrying about our imperfections, especially our physical bodies, because we have to understand that nobody is perfect. So, we shouldn't compare ourselves with others.



### TASK 2

Read the following phrases.

They are several possible themes of a song entitled "Fly" in TASK 3.

Add the list with your own.

#### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru menuliskan judul lagu "Fly" di papan tulis. Kemudian, Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik memprediksi tema lagu tersebut.
2. Peserta didik diminta membaca frasa yang tersedia yang merupakan prediksi atas tema lagu "Fly" tersebut. Sebagai pengembangan, Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik untuk membuat prediksi mereka sendiri berdasarkan interpretasi terhadap judul lagu.
3. Apabila peserta didik sudah mengetahui lagu tersebut, peserta didik diminta menyebutkan tema lagu tersebut dari daftar frasa yang tersedia.
4. Setelah dirasa cukup, Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat melanjutkan kegiatan pembelajaran pada TASK selanjutnya.

#### Contoh jawaban:

- between relationship men and women
- big dreams
- showing sympathy
- faithfulness
- good friendship

- caring for other people
- loneliness
- ideals
- helping each other
- creating solidarity



### TASK 3

Listen and complete the song lyrics based on what you have heard.

#### Lagu yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:

##### Fly

(By: Avril Lavigne)

There's a light inside of all of us  
 It's never hiding you just have to light it  
 It's the one thing that you've gotta trust  
 It's like **(1) a diamond**, you just have to find it

So if you ever feel like **(2) giving up**  
 Yeah, **(3) let's remember** that ... we were all meant to fly

Spread your wings, across the universe  
 It's your time to, it's your time to shine  
 There's a light inside of all of us  
 Soon, you'll find that it's your time to fly  
 Your time to fly

**(4) A little help** is all it ever takes  
 Somebody else to tell you it's **(5) worth fighting**  
 A single step becomes a leap a faith  
 That's when you realize you started flyin'

So, don't you ever say you're giving up!  
 No, there's no **(6) looking back** ... cause we were all meant to fly

Spread your wings, across the universe  
 It's your time to, it's your time to shine  
 There's a light inside of all of us  
 Soon, you'll find that it's your time to fly  
 It's your time to fly

Just **(7) reach up**, don't give up  
 Until you touch **(8) the sky**  
 Just reach up, don't give up  
 Until you've realized

That we were all meant **(9) to fly**

Spread your wings, across the universe  
 It's your time to, it's your time to shine  
 There's a light inside of all of us  
 Soon, you'll find that it's your time to fly, fly

It's your time to, it's your time to shine, shine  
 Soon, **(10) you'll find** that it's your time to fly

Spread your wings, across the universe  
 It's your time to, it's your time to shine  
 There's a light inside of all of us  
 Soon, you'll find that it's your time to fly

Adopted from: <http://www.metrolyrics.com/fly-lyrics-avril-lavigne.html> (July 2, 2015)

#### Jawaban:

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. a diamond      | 2. giving up     |
| 3. let's remember | 4. A little help |
| 5. worth fighting | 6. looking back  |
| 7. reach up       | 8. the sky       |
| 9. to fly         | 10. you'll find  |





## TASK 9

Work in groups of four.

Compare your work in TASK 8 with your group members'.

Ask questions about the differences and discuss the answers.

### Petunjuk Guru

1. Bapak/Ibu Guru meminta peserta didik membentuk kelompok yang terdiri atas empat anggota.
2. Setiap anggota saling menukarkan hasil pekerjaan mereka pada TASK 8, yaitu penulisan lirik lagu, lalu mendiskusikan perbedaan hasil tulisan semua anggota kelompok tersebut.
3. Pada akhir diskusi tersebut, setiap kelompok menulis kembali lirik lagu "Fly" dengan mengambil kalimat-kalimat dari hasil tulisan semua anggota yang sesuai dan koheren sehingga kalimat-kalimat tersebut membentuk teks yang memiliki kesatuan atau keutuhan arti.
4. Bapak/Ibu Guru membimbing jalannya diskusi tersebut dan membantu peserta didik/kelompok yang menemui kesulitan.
5. Setelah waktu diskusi selesai, Bapak/Ibu Guru memotivasi peserta didik membacakan jawabannya, lalu memberi nilai.

### Contoh jawaban:

There's a light inside all of us and it's never hiding. You just have to light it. It's the one thing that you've got to trust. It's like a diamond and you just have to find it.

If you ever feel like giving up, let's remember that we were all meant to fly.

Spread your wings across the universe because now it's your time to shine. There is a light inside all of us. You'll find soon that it's your time to fly.

A little help is all it ever takes another person else to tell you it's worth fighting. A single step becomes a leap in faith that's when you realize. Then, you start flying.

Never say you're giving up. There's no looking back because we were all meant to fly.

Just reach up and don't give up until you touch the sky. Just reach up and don't give up until you've realized that we were all meant to fly.



## TASK 10

Listen to any song and write the lyrics down.

What is the song about?

Share your work with the class.

### Contoh jawaban:

**You Gotta be**  
**(By: Des'Ree)**

Listen as your day unfolds, challenge what the future holds  
Try and keep your head up to the sky  
Lovers, they may cause you tears  
Go ahead release your fears, stand up and be counted  
Don't be ashamed to cry

You gotta be  
You gotta be bad, you gotta be bold, you gotta be wiser  
You gotta be hard, you gotta be tough, you gotta be stronger  
You gotta be cool, you gotta be calm, you gotta stay together  
All I know, all I know, love will save the day

Herald what your mother said  
Reading the books your father read  
Try to solve the puzzles in your own sweet time  
Some may have more cash than you  
Others take a different view, my oh my, heh, hey

\*) You gotta be bad, you gotta be bold, you gotta be wiser  
You gotta be hard, you gotta be tough, you gotta be stronger  
You gotta be cool, you gotta be calm, you gotta stay together  
All I know, all I know, love will save the day

Life asks no questions, it goes on without you  
Leaving you behind if you can't stand the pace  
The world keeps on spinning  
You can't stop it, if you try to  
This time it's danger staring you in the face

Remember, listen as your day unfolds  
Challenge what the future holds  
Try and keep your head up to the sky  
Lovers, they may cause you tears  
Go ahead release your fears, my oh my heh, hey, hey

Back to \*)

Back to \*)

Adopted from: <http://www.azlyrics.com/lyrics/desree/yougottabe.html> (July 13, 2015)

The song is about love and life, but it's mostly about you and the way you should choose to live your life. Life is difficult, but you can face it up and make decisions, otherwise, life will go on without asking your opinion and you'll float downstream instead of swimming in the direction you want to. People may press you in many ways, but you have to stand strong and choose your own way. Love may be hard and make you suffer, but love is what will make your life worth living.

Adopted from: <http://www.multimedia-english.com/videos/music/you-gotta-be-desree-501> (July 24, 2015)



## TASK 11

Read the song lyrics and answer the questions that follow.

### Jawaban:

1. The song title means that we will find what we're looking for as long as we stick together.
2. Yes, I do. The song tells us that we should believe that we can get what we want as long as we can maintain our togetherness which is important to make us stronger.
3. The theme is about friendship and dream.
4. The line means that togetherness makes us keep strong.
5. It refers to the diamond castle.



## TASK 12

Complete the following song lyrics with the suitable words from the box.

Then, read the complete song lyrics.

### Jawaban:

1. d
2. b
3. c
4. i
5. e
6. a
7. h
8. g



### Variasi

Dengan perintah kegiatan yang sama, Bapak/Ibu Guru dapat memberikan soal berikut.

- |             |              |             |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| a. roads    | b. worst     | c. days     |
| d. sleep    | e. drew      | f. taste    |
| g. darkest  | h. strangers | i. stations |
| j. colorful |              |             |

### Maps (By: Maroon 5)

I miss the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of a sweeter life  
 I miss the conversation  
 I'm searching for a song tonight  
 I'm changing all of the (2) \_\_\_\_\_  
 I like to think that we had it all  
 We (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a map to a better place  
 But on that road I took a fall  
 Oh baby why did you run away?

I was there for you  
 In your (4) \_\_\_\_\_ times  
 I was there for you  
 In your darkest nights  
 But I wonder where were you  
 When I was at my (5) \_\_\_\_\_  
 Down on my knees  
 And you said you had my back  
 So I wonder where were you  
 All the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ you took came back to me  
 So I'm following the map that leads to you  
 The map that leads to you  
 Ain't nothing I can do  
 The map that leads to you  
 Following, following, following to you  
 The map that leads to you  
 Ain't nothing I can do  
 The map that leads to you  
 Following, following, following

I hear your voice in my (7) \_\_\_\_\_ at night  
 Hard to resist temptation  
 'Cause all these (8) \_\_\_\_\_ come over me  
 Now I can't get over you  
 No I just can't get over you

Adopted from: <http://www.metrolyrics.com/maps-lyrics-maroon-5.html> (July 2, 2015)

#### Jawaban:

1. f   2. i   3. e   4. g  
 5. b   6. a   7. d   8. h



### TASK 13

In pairs, discuss the message in the song in TASK 12. Share your answer with class.

#### Jawaban:

The message of the song: We should never stop believing and always stand strong, no matter what.



### TASK 14

In pairs, try to guess the titles of the following songs. You can find the answers in the lyrics. Who sang the songs?

#### Jawaban:

- The title of song : *Invincible*  
The singer : Kelly Clarkson ft. Sia
- The title of song : *Perfect (The way you are)*  
The singer : Emma Blackery



### TASK 15

In pairs, discuss the message in each piece of the song lyrics in TASK 14.

Share your work with the class.

#### Contoh jawaban:

- The song is about the singer's personal experience when struggling for his life. The singer tells us that we should be stronger and ready to take on the world.
- The song tells us that we should accept ourselves as we are and stop trying what we're not. Authenticity is a key to success and finding our ways in life.



### Variasi

Guess the title of the following song. Who sang the song? What is the message of the song?

A spot soaring  
 Down through the pouring  
 Rain and restoring  
 Life to the lighthouse  
 A slow motion wave on the ocean  
 Stirs my emotion  
 Up like a raincloud

When did the sky turned black?  
 And when will the light come back?

A cab driver turned to skydiver,  
 Then to survivor, dying to breakdown  
 A blood brother, surrogate mother  
 Hugging each other, crying their eyes out

When did the sky turn black?  
 And when will the light come back?  
 I'm ecstatic like a drug addict  
 Locked in the attic  
 Strung out and spellbound

\*) I fought all through the night  
 Oh, oh, but I made it alive  
 The sun starting to rise  
 Oh, oh, these are beautiful times

\*\*\*) This part of my life is so hard,  
 So hard, so hard,  
 But I'm gonna survive!  
 Oh, oh, these are beautiful times!



A bad feeling  
 Burnt through the ceiling  
 Leaving my healing heart with a new scar  
 A dead fire rose and rose higher  
 Like a vampire up from the graveyard

When did the sky turn black?  
 And when will the light come back?  
 We all suffer but we recover  
 Just to discover life where we all are

Back to \*)

Back to \*\*)

\*\*\*) This part of my life is so hard,  
 So hard, so hard  
 But I'm gonna survive  
 Oh, oh, these are beautiful times!

Back to \*\*\*)

My heart's burning bad and it's turning black  
 But I'm learning how to be stronger  
 And sincerely I love you dearly  
 Oh, but I'm clearly destined to wander

Adopted from: <http://www.musicinsideu.com/2014/04/beautiful-times-owl-city-ft-lindsey.html> (July 14, 2015)

**Jawaban:**

The title of the song : *Beautiful Times*  
 The singer : Owl City ft. Lindsey Stirling  
 The message of the song : Life is wonderful despite the burdens and afflictions that seek us out. The song is for those who search for strength to rise above hardship.

**Contoh jawaban:**

**We're The World (USA for Africa)  
 (By: Michael Jackson)**

There comes a time when we heed a certain call  
 When the world must come together as one  
 There are people dying  
 And it's time to lend a hand to life  
 The greatest gift of all

We can't go on pretending day by day  
 That someone, somewhere will soon make a change  
 We all are a part of God's great big family  
 And the truth, you know,  
 Love is all we need

\*) We are the world, we are the children  
 We are the ones who make a brighter day  
 So let's start giving  
 There's a choice we're making  
 We're saving our own lives  
 It's true we'll make a better day  
 Just you and me

Send them your heart so they'll know that someone cares  
 And their lives will be stronger and free  
 As God has shown us by turning stone to bread  
 So we all must lend a helping hand

Back to \*)

When you're down and out, there seems no hope at all  
 But if you just believe there's no way we can fall  
 Well...well...well  
 Let's realize that a change can only come  
 When we stand together as one

Back to \*)

Adopted from: <http://www.azlyrics.com/lyrics/michaeljackson/weretheworldusaforafrica.html>

The song is about caring for each other. The singer invites us to make better days by starting giving our hands to help others. The singer says that a change can only come when we stand together as one.



**TASK 16**

Work in pairs.

Find another song whose lyrics raise people's awareness of the need to do kindness for family, friends or other people.

Present the song in class.

Explain what the song is about.



**TASK 17**

Work in groups.

Observe your surrounding, then identify the problems taking place.

Discuss how to make people aware of the problems and propose what people can do to solve the problem.

Share the result of your discussion with the class.

**Contoh jawaban:**

Problems	What to Do to Solve the Problem
The school environment isn't healthy enough.	Maintain the school environment. Clean surrounding the school together regularly.
Bullying	Keep solidarity. Love and care for each other.



## TASK 18

Complete the following table based on the songs you have learned in this unit.

Contoh jawaban:

No.	Song Title	Singer	Message
1.	<i>Fly</i>	Avril Lavigne	We have to pursue our dreams and mustn't give up.
2.	<i>We're Gonna Find It</i>	OST Barbie and the Diamond Castle	We should believe that we can get what we want as long as we can maintain our togetherness which is important to make us stronger.
3.	<i>Fight Song</i>	Rachel Platten	Never stop believing and always stand strong, no matter what.
4.	<i>Invincible</i>	Kelly Clarkson ft. Sia	We should be stronger and ready to take on the world.
5.	<i>Perfect (The way you are)</i>	Emma Blackery	Accept yourself as you are and stop trying what you're not.



## Assessment

A. Choose A, B, C, D or E for the correct answer.

Jawaban:

1. E 2. A 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. E

B. Read the song lyrics.  
What is the message?

Jawaban:

The message of the song is: we have to be brave and strong to face the reality, especially when it is really bad.

# School Examination

## LISTENING SECTION

### PART I

1. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**
- Girl : Excuse me, may I come in?  
Man : Sure. Please have a seat.  
Girl : Thank you, Sir. I'd like to give you a proposal about a donation for the victims of the volcano eruption. I hope you agree with it.  
Man : Okay. Let me see.  
**Narrator** : Why does the girl meet the man?

**Jawaban: E**

2. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**
- Man : Excuse me. Where is the Taruna convention center, please? I'd like to attend a seminar there.  
Woman : Just head west for about 150 meters and you will find it on the right side.  
Man : Do you mean that I have to cross the street?  
Woman : Yes, but don't worry. There is a bridge crossing there.  
**Narrator** : What is the man looking for?

**Jawaban: C**

3. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**
- Girl : Hey! What are you going to do?  
Boy : I'd like to climb the coconut tree, to pick young coconuts.  
Girl : You had better not climb the tree. It's windy and you may fall from it.  
Boy : All right.  
**Narrator** : What does the girl suggest the boy?

**Jawaban: C**

4. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**
- Girl : We need wood for the campfire tonight.  
Boy : Don't worry. The boys and I will search for it in the forest.  
Girl : Thanks. Please take care.  
Boy : Sure.  
**Narrator** : What does the boy offer the girl?

**Jawaban: A**

### PART II

5. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

- Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**
- Girl : I'd like to have lunch at the school canteen, but I lost my money on the bus this morning.  
Boy : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator** : What is the boy's possible response?  
A. Please forgive me.  
B. Don't be so sad! I'll treat you.  
C. I am going to have lunch in the canteen.  
D. I think it's a good idea.

**Jawaban: B**

6. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

- Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**
- Boy : Many high officials are being involved in corruption. What do you think?  
Girl : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator** : What will the girl most likely reply?  
A. Let me help you.  
B. I think they should receive harsh punishments.  
C. I'm sure that you will forgive me.  
D. You look in pain.

**Jawaban: B**

7. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

- Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**
- Boy : Why do you look so sad?  
Girl : Read this news! Many people were killed due to a helicopter crash.  
Boy : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator** : What is the best response?  
A. How dare you say that!  
B. Can you help me, please?  
C. I'm happy to hear that.  
D. How pitiful!

**Jawaban: D**

### PART III

8. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**
- Man : Icha, please fetch me the nails. I'd like to repair the fence.  
Girl : Where are they, Dad?  
Man : In a wooden box in the warehouse.  
Girl : Okay, Dad.  
**Narrator** : Which picture goes with the dialog?

**Jawaban: C**

9. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

Woman : What do you usually do on Sunday morning?  
Man : I like riding a horse around the village.  
Woman : Do you have a horse?  
Man : Yes. I keep two horses at home.  
**Narrator :** Which picture goes with the dialog?

**Jawaban: B**

10. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

One hot afternoon, Bagas walked home from school. Feeling tired, he decided to sit on a bench under a big tree. Whilst he was sitting there, he heard a noise on the tree. He looked up and saw a bird chirping near its nest. The bird looked nervous and walked and flew around its nest. Bagas wondered what happened to the bird. Accidentally, he saw a small egg on the ground. Bagas thought that it must be the bird's egg which fell from its nest. Soon Bagas picked the egg and climbed the tree. He returned the egg into its nest. Getting its egg back into the nest, the bird chirped happily.

**Narrator :** Which picture goes with the monolog?

**Jawaban: E**

11. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

Mrs. Dodik is a junk collector. The simple woman is about forty years old and lives with her two children. Her husband passed away several years ago, so she collects junk for a living. She is never ashamed of being a junk collector. Every day she rides her old bicycle and visits people's houses and garbage dumps to collect junk. She puts the junk in her sacks and sells them to the junk dealer. It is hard work, but Mrs. Dodik never complains.

**Narrator :** Which picture goes with the monolog?

**Jawaban: A**

**PART IV**

**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Questions 12 and 13 are based on the following monolog.**

Once, there lived two women, Mrs. Hoky and Mrs. Dully, selling soup. Mrs. Hoky's soup was so delicious that many people liked it. Her soup was always sold-out. On the other hand, people didn't like Mrs. Dully's soup.

Mrs. Dully was very curious as to why Mrs. Hoky's soup was more delicious than hers. One day, she went to Mrs. Hoky's house and asked her about her recipe in making soup. Mrs. Hoky gave Mrs. Dully her recipe. Arriving home, Mrs. Dully made soup using the recipe. She thought that by using Mrs. Hoky's recipe, her soup would be sold-out. However, she was very disappointed. People still didn't like her soup.

Being upset, she went to Mrs. Hoky's house and accused her of giving a wrong recipe. Smilingly, Mrs. Hoky said, "I didn't deceive you. That's my recipe. One thing you should know, I always make my soup with love. That's my secret recipe."

**Narrator:**

12. What did Mrs. Hoky and Mrs. Dully sell?  
13. What was the secret of Mrs. Dolly's recipe?

12. **Jawaban: A**

13. **Jawaban: D**

**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**

**Questions 14 and 15 are based on the following monolog.**

Swordfish are a kind of fish living in tropical and temperate seas. They feed on fish and sometimes squid. They are named from their elongated upper jaw, on which they spike their prey before juggling it into their mouths. They use their speed to catch up with their prey. They can swim in short bursts of up to 60mph. They don't have scales, to reduce drag. The females hatch their eggs within their bodies rather than lay them. It means that the young are larger before they face predators. In Florida, swordfish are called sportfish because they are very large and strong. The fishermen regard them as a real challenge.

Adopted from: Anonymous, *Tell Me Where?*, London, Octopus Publishing Group Ltd., 2010.

**Narrator:**

14. Where do swordfish live?  
15. Why are swordfish called sportfish in Florida?

14. **Jawaban: A**

15. **Jawaban: E**

**This is the end of the listening section.**

**READING SECTION**

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 16. D | 31. C | 46. C |
| 17. B | 32. E | 47. D |
| 18. C | 33. E | 48. B |
| 19. D | 34. D | 49. E |
| 20. B | 35. B | 50. A |
| 21. E | 36. A |       |
| 22. A | 37. C |       |
| 23. E | 38. A |       |
| 24. C | 39. C |       |
| 25. A | 40. B |       |
| 26. B | 41. E |       |
| 27. A | 42. B |       |
| 28. D | 43. D |       |
| 29. C | 44. E |       |
| 30. A | 45. A |       |

# National Examination

## LISTENING SECTION

### PART I

1. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Boy : Sorry, I'm late, Mom.  
Woman : Do you know what time it is?  
Boy : Yes, Mom. It's 3 p.m. I do apologize. I had to wait for the bus for so long.  
Woman : We're worried about you. Why didn't you call us?  
Boy : I ran out of phone credit.  
**Narrator** : What did the boy apologize for?

Jawaban: A

2. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
BMan : Are you busy this afternoon?  
Woman : Well, I'm going to meet Karin at 4 this afternoon. We're planning to study together. What's up?  
Man : Actually, I would like to ask you to accompany me to the bookstore. I want to buy a few reference books for my paper.  
Woman : Sorry, I can't go with you.  
**Narrator** : What is the woman going to do this afternoon?

Jawaban: D

3. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Woman : Are you all right?  
Man : Yes, I'm just feeling cold.  
Woman : Hmm ... would you like ginger tea? It will keep you warm.  
Man : Thanks. That would be nice.  
**Narrator** : What does the man mean?

Jawaban: C

4. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Woman : Excuse me. Could you tell me which commuter train goes to Bogor?  
Man : Yes. Take commuter train number 553.  
Woman : What time is the next departure?  
Man : It's at 2:43 p.m.  
Woman : Thank you.  
**Narrator** : What are the speakers talking about?

Jawaban: E

### PART II

5. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

**Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Man : You've been staying here for a month. What do you think of the city?  
Woman : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator** : What will the woman likely reply with?  
A. I recommend you consider Yogyakarta.  
B. I think it's a pleasant city to live in.  
C. We'll check-out tomorrow.  
D. Have a nice vacation.

Jawaban: B

6. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

**Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Woman : You look worried. What has happened?  
Man : Yes. I had a bad mark in my English test. I'm afraid to tell my parents about it.  
Woman : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator** : What will the woman say?  
A. Thank you for listening.  
B. How happy to meet you here.  
C. You should be honest with them.  
D. Sorry. I can't go with you.

Jawaban: C

7. Write your answer on your answer sheet.

**Percakapan dan pilihan jawaban yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
Man : Have you found your suitcase?  
Woman : Not yet, but I have reported the loss to the police. You know, there are a few important documents in the suitcase.  
Man : \_\_\_\_\_  
**Narrator** : What is the best response?  
A. I hope you recover your suitcase soon.  
B. I can't afford the suitcase. It's expensive.  
C. Can I help you pack?  
D. Sorry, I didn't mean to.

Jawaban: A

**PART III**

8. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Guru:**  
 Man : Let's ride on the roller coaster. I think it will be fun.  
 Woman : No, thanks. I don't like such a scary ride. You know, I'm afraid of heights. I prefer driving bumper cars.  
 Man : That's O.K. Let's go.  
**Narrator :** What ride are the speakers going to ride on?

**Jawaban: D**

9. **Percakapan yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Guru:**  
 Man : Excuse me. Do you have thumbtacks?  
 Woman : Yes, I have a few.  
 Man : Can I have a few, please? I need to stick this pamphlet on the announcement board.  
 Woman : Sure. Here you are.  
**Narrator :** What does the man need?

**Jawaban: A**

10. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 I am interested in a watch, displayed in a mail order catalog. I have had a look and read the specifications. The waterproof watch looks exclusive with its simple masculine style but trendy design. It is 4 centimeters in diameter and has a stainless steel strap, which is 22 centimeters long. The watch features analog and digital displays, stopwatch, an alarm, automatic calendar and light with afterglow. It is controlled by five side buttons, three are on the right side to adjust the time, alarm and stopwatch and the other two are on the left side to set the mode and turn the light on. The battery is said to be durable for 5 years. I would like to buy it, but I don't have enough money.  
**Narrator :** Which picture goes with the monolog?

**Jawaban: E**

11. **Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
 Alfonso Cuaron's *Gravity* is a science fiction film about space survival adventure, which is masterfully directed and visually stunning. It stars Sandra Bullock and George Clooney as astronauts who survive a disaster in the form of satellite debris hitting their spacecraft. The visual effects, the seemingly long single shots and the cinematography by Emmanuel Lubezki make *Gravity* a cinematic masterpiece. The 14 minute opening single shot is a captivating visual treat. However, filming for 91 minutes, the duration of the movie is short as the audience could have done with a little more of the visual space fiesta. Overall, the superb sound, the proper use of 3D effects, immaculate cinematography and crisp performance makes *Gravity* a must-watch film.  
 Adopted from: Anushua Roy, A Quick Take on Gravity – Movie Review, <https://theinsight.co.in/index.php/gravity-movie-review/#.UomZJsv-JAG> (18th November 2013)  
**Narrator :** Which picture shows what the film stars do in the film?

**Jawaban: D**

**PART IV**

**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Questions 12 and 13 are based on the following monolog.**

An old woman spent a leisurely afternoon shopping at the mall. When she returned to her car, she found four strange men sitting in it. Frightened, the woman dropped her shopping bags and shouted for help. She tapped the car window and asked the men to get out of the car. Through panick and confusion, the four men ran off quickly. Then, the woman got into the car, but her key couldn't slot into the car's ignition. She realized that the car was identical to hers, which was parked a few spaces away. She drove to the police department and reported the story. The officer on duty laughed and pointed to the other end of the counter. There were four men reporting about assault by an older woman. They were the ones who were sitting in the car she thought was hers!

Adopted from: Manuel dos Santos, *My World 4*, New York, Mc-Graw Hill, 2006.

**Narrator:**

12. When did the incident take place?  
 13. What did the woman do when she saw four men sitting in a car?

12. **Jawaban: C**

13. **Jawaban: B**

**Teks yang diperdengarkan oleh Bapak/Ibu Guru:**  
**Questions 14 and 15 are based on the following monolog.**

The Administration of South Lampung District, Lampung Province has started developing the Agro-forestry Park around the Grand Elty Kalianda Resort, Antara reported.

"The Agro-forestry concept is the combination of crops, forestry and livestock, relating to environmental education," said South Lampung Administration Secretary Sutono.

The Agro-forestry Park is aimed at creating a combination system of agriculture, plantation, farming and forestry tourism activities and attracting more domestic and foreign tourists to the region.

"We are planning for the park building to be completed within four years, by planting several crops and a number of rare plants such as sandalwood, aloes, ironwood, ebonies, *rasamaya*, *poska*, *merbau*, walnut and peace trees," he said.

He added that the plants will be brought from IPB National Breeding Center and Bogor Botanical Garden. "We will develop an education center with 27 hectares wide and 27,000 plants," Sutono added.

Adopted from: <http://m.antaranews.com/en/news/91459/south-lampung-develops-agroforestry-park> (November 18, 2013)

**Narrator:**

14. What is the monolog about?  
 15. How long will the park building take, to be completed?

14. **Jawaban: A**

15. **Jawaban: C**

**This is the end of the listening section.**

**READING SECTION**

- |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 16. A | 26. A | 36. D | 46. B |
| 17. D | 27. D | 37. E | 47. E |
| 18. A | 28. C | 38. A | 48. A |
| 19. B | 29. E | 39. A | 49. B |
| 20. C | 30. B | 40. B | 50. D |
| 21. E | 31. C | 41. D |       |
| 22. D | 32. A | 42. A |       |
| 23. D | 33. D | 43. D |       |
| 24. C | 34. B | 44. A |       |
| 25. B | 35. A | 45. C |       |